First Latin Book

Collar and Daniell

amo, amas amat
I loved a lass
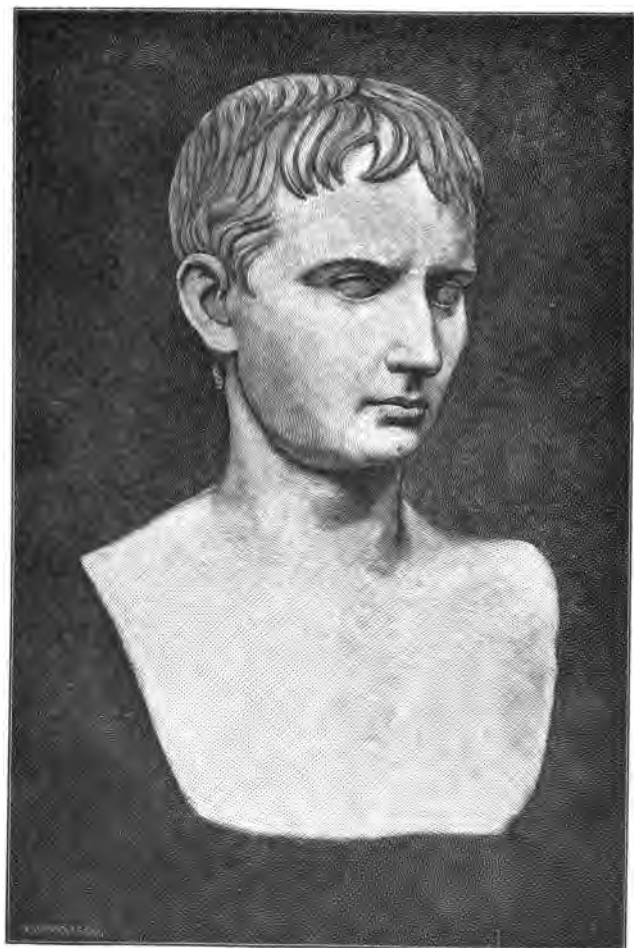
THE YOUNG AUGUSTUS

THE

FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

WILLIAM C. COLLAR, A.M.

HEAD-MASTER ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M.

PRINCIPAL CHAUNCY-HALL SCHOOL, BOSTON

BOSTON, U.S.A.

PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY

1900

f18 : 1940

PREFACE.

THIS book is not a revision of " The Beginner's Latin Book," nor is it intended to supersede that work. It has been written for the purpose of offering to schools that cannot afford the amount of time and practice required to complete " The Beginner's Latin Book," a work not less thorough, but easier, and demanding not more than two-thirds as much time. The reduction has been made almost wholly by shortening the exercises for translation, particularly those to be turned into Latin.

Those who compare the two books will find that the inflections of the language are illustrated with as much copiousness in this book as in the former. The same is true of the comparative completeness with which the principles of syntax are treated. In fact a place was found for some points of construction that were not taken up in the earlier book.

Except in the few pages of introduction, the *colloquia*, and some minor matters, the contents of the book are new, but everywhere increased simplicity and clearness have been studied, not novelty.

Deviations from the method of " The Beginner's Latin Book " will be found to be unimportant, except in the treatment of the pronouns, the subjunctive, the infinitive,

and the participle. Instead of deferring these subjects till very late and then dealing with them in mass, they have been brought forward much earlier in some of their uses, so as to distribute difficulties and make practice more gradual, varied, and extended. Reading lessons have been introduced early and great pains taken to grade them in point of difficulty to the progress of the learner, and at the same time to exemplify those forms and principles of syntax that have constituted the substance of preceding lessons.

Beyond such changes in order and method, it did not seem to us wise to depart from the plan of the earlier book. The surprising favor with which that book was received at once, on its publication, and its annually increasing use, amounting, as the publishers inform us, to more than 45,000 copies a year, seemed the strongest justification for building on the same plan.

In preparing the former book we conceived it to be of the highest importance, "while following a rigorously scientific method in the development of the successive subjects, to impart something of attractiveness, interest, freshness, and variety to the study of the elements of Latin." [1] To engage the interest of the young learner at the outset of his study of Latin is to gain for him an immense advantage in wrestling with so difficult a language. Though this principle seems to have been purposely ignored in some first Latin books that have appeared since the publication of "The Beginner's Latin Book," we are not shaken in our belief that both reason and experience will continue to condemn such works as

[1] See "The Beginner's Latin Book," p. vi.

fundamentally and fatally wrong in conception, whatever
be the care and skill shown in their compilation. To
acquire Latin is a task calling for patience, industry,
perseverance, time. But if the beginner, as sometimes
happens, has the misfortune to spend a good part of a
year over a wooden book of forms and exercises, then
to be thrust upon a difficult and uninteresting mili-
tary history, there is considerable danger that he will
become impatient, lazy, discouraged, and will abandon
the study.

Whatever means were found available in the prepara-
tion of "The Beginner's Latin Book" for imparting
"interest and freshness," have been used in this, and in
particular the principle of continuity in separate exercises
has been kept in view and applied as far as was found
practicable. What is meant may be found illustrated in
such exercises as those numbered 104, 118, 123, 128,
129, 310, 480.

It will be seen that this book is designed to be not
simply a stile to a particular author, but rather a gate to
the Latin language. No effort has been made to keep
the vocabularies down to the point of meagreness and to
circumscribe them to one set of ideas. It was accord-
ingly no objection in the opinion of the authors, but
rather a recommendation, that the selections for reading
at the end of the book contain a copious and varied
vocabulary. Yet it appears that the learner, after com-
pleting the lessons that precede, has already had and
used more than two-thirds of the words occurring in these
selections.

The attention of all who use this book is called to the
special and general vocabularies at the end. They are

not mere catalogues of words. Great pains have been taken to make them thoroughly helpful to the learner. Besides references to the text, comparisons are constantly made with synonymous words, and the learner is reminded of the most interesting kindred words in English.

We are strongly of the opinion that, after the rudiments have been learned, it is wise to have some weeks or months of reading in easy Latin before Nepos and Caesar are taken up. Even in the course of the first few months of study it is desirable to give a part of the hour of recitation to reading at sight in such a book as " The New Gradatim," the teacher leading the way and supplying the meanings of words. This book may very well be followed by some easy Latin Reader, or by " Viri Romae," for which a term or more of the first year should remain after completing the lessons. We are confident that such a course would so much lessen the difficulty of beginning Nepos or Caesar, and so much increase the pleasure and confidence of the learner, that it would soon seem strange that a different practice should ever have prevailed.

The merits of "Viri Romae," as a reading book for boys and girls, seem not to be fully appreciated in this country. It is not too difficult, it is interesting from beginning to end, and it presents to the young many noble ideals of spirit and conduct. Occasionally a pedant objects to the Latinity; but the Latinity is at least as good as that of Nepos, and learned schoolmasters all over Europe put it into the hands of their pupils.

Our thanks are due to Miss Alice M. Wing, of the Springfield High School, and to Mr. J. H. Humphries, of the Girls' High School, Philadelphia, for suggestions

made while the proof-sheets were passing through the press. We are under special obligations to Mr. John L. March, of the Harry Hillman Academy, Wilkesbarre, Pa., and to Mr. Clarence W. Gleason, of the Roxbury Latin School. Both gentlemen made valuable suggestions and read the proofs with as much concentrated attention and scrupulous care as if the work were their own and its accuracy depended upon them individually.

WM. C. COLLAR.
M. G. DANIELL.

BOSTON, Sept. 14, 1894.

CONTENTS.

ILLUSTRATIONS.

THE

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION. .

THIS introduction, particularly so much of it as relates to pronunciation, may be most profitably used for reference. Pupils catch pronunciation quickly from the lips of the teacher, and, if they make mistakes, are interested in being referred to rules. It is therefore advised that the teacher begin with the *Colloquium*, page 5, pronouncing slowly each sentence, the pupils following successively, and then together.

---

1. ALPHABET. — The Latin alphabet has no *j* or *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.

2. *I* does service both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the force of a consonant, and is called *i-consonant*.

3. Of the consonants

The mutes are . . . . . . p, b, t, d, c, k, g, q.
The liquids are . . . . . . l, m, n, r.
The sibilant is . . . . . . s.
The double consonants are . . x = *cs* or *gs*, z = *ds*.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, ROMAN METHOD.

4.   *Vowels.*

ā as the last *a* in *aha'*.   ă as the first *a* in *aha'*.
ē as in *they*.   ĕ as in *met*.
ī as in *machine*.   ĭ as in *pin*.
ō as in *holy*.   ŏ as in *wholly*.
ū¹ like *oo* in *boot*.   ŭ like *oo* in foot.

5.   *Diphthongs.*

ae like *ai* in *aisle*.   au like *ou* in *our*.
ei (rare) like *ei* in *eight*.   oe like *oi* in *boil*.
eu (rare) like *eu* in *feud*.

6.   *Consonants.*

Consonants generally have the same sounds as in English.
But observe the following : —

c as in *come*.   g as in *get*.
i-consonant like *y* in *yet*.   s as in *sun*.
t as in *time*.   v like *w* in *wine*.
ch like *k* in *kite*.   ph like *f* in *far*.

7. SYLLABLES.

I. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong
with or without one or more consonants.   Hence
a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and
diphthongs : **ae-gri-tū'-dŏ**, *sickness*.

---

¹ In *qu, gu*, and sometimes in *su*, before a vowel, *u* is a semi-vowel or consonant, is pronounced like *w*, and joined in utterance with the preceding letter; so likewise in cui and huic: quis, quī, *who*, an'-guis, *snake;* cŏn-suē'-tus, *accustomed*.

2. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the vowel following: **a-mā'-bi-lis,** *amiable.*

3. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: **im'-pro-bus,** *bad;* **ho'-spes,** *guest.*

4. But in compound words the division must show the component parts : **ab'-est** (ab, *away;* **est,** *he is*), *he is away.*

5. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima;* the one next to the last, the *penult;* the one before the penult, the *antepenult.*

8. QUANTITY.

1. Vowels are *long* (ˉ) or *short* (˘). In this book the long vowels are marked, except in some titles; unmarked vowels must be regarded as short.

2. A vowel is short before a vowel (with few exceptions) or *h*: **pŏ-ē'-ma,** *poem;* **grā'-tĭ-ae,** *thanks;* **nĭ'-hil,** *nothing.*

3. Diphthongs, vowels representing diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction are long: **in-cāū'-tus,** *heedless;* **in-ī'-quus** (inaequus), *unequal;* **cŏ'-gŏ** (cŏĭgo), *collect.*

4. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **vō'-cēs,** *voices;* **ae'-dēs,** *temple.*

5. A syllable is long if it has a short vowel followed by two or more consonants (except a mute

followed by *l* or *r*), or by *x* or *s*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: **sunt,** *they are;* **tem'-plum,** *temple;* **dux,** *leader.*

9. ACCENT.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first: **tu'-ba,** *trumpet.*

2. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, otherwise on the antepenult: **prae-dī'-cŏ,** *foretell;* **prae'-di-cŏ,** *declare;* **il-le'-ce-brae,** *snares;* **pa-ter'-nus,**[1] *paternal.*

3. Several words, called enclitics, of which the commonest are -ne, the sign of a question, and -que, *and,* are appended to other words, and such words are then accented on the syllable preceding the -ne or -que: **amat'-ne,** *does he love?* **dōna'-que,** *and gifts.*

10. ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION. — By this method the above rules relating to syllables (7) and accent (9) are observed, and words are pronounced substantially as in English; but final *es* is sounded as in English *ease,* and the final *ōs* (acc. plur.) as in *dose.*

---

[1] Here, though the *vowel* of the penult is short, the *syllable* is long by 8, 5.

The following *colloquium* may be used for practice and to illustrate the preceding statements. See introductory note, page 1.

11. *Colloquium.*

Augustus. Quid tibi vīs?

What do you wish (for yourself)?

Iūlus. Tēcum ambulāre velim.

I should like to take a walk with you.

A. Ego nōlō; domī manēre mālō.

I don't want to; I prefer to stay at home.

I. Cūr māvīs?

Why do you prefer (that)?

A. Ego et frāter vesperī cum patre ambulāre mālumus.

My brother and I had rather take a walk at evening with our father.

I. Cūr mēcum per silvās vagārī nōn vultis?

Why don't you want to roam with me through the woods?

A. Quod vesperī amoenitāte fruī mālumus quam sōlis ārdōre.

Because we had rather enjoy the pleasantness of evening than the heat of the sun.

I. At iam saepe mēcum ambulāre nōluistī.

But often before now you have not wanted to walk with me.

A. Nōn rēctē dīcis; nōn est causa cūr tēcum ambulāre nōlim; at cum hortus avī satis amplus sit et lacum silvamque contineat, ibi mālumus lūdere. Sī vīs, nōbīscum venī.

What you say is not true; there is no reason why I should not want to walk with you; but since grandfather's garden is quite large, and has a pond and a grove, we had rather play there. If you like, come with us.

12. CASES.

1. The names of the cases in Latin are : *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, vocative, locative.* Their characteristics of form, meaning, and use are illustrated in the paradigms and exercises which follow.

13. GENDER. — The gender of Latin nouns is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning, but much oftener by the termination.

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months, are *masculine:* **agricola,** *farmer;* **Cicerō,** *Cicero;* **Padus,** *Po;* **aquilō,** *north wind;* **Iānuārius,** *January.*

2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, islands, and trees, are *feminine:* **rēgīna,** *queen;* **Tullia,** *Tullia;* **Āfrica,** *Africa;* **Rōma,** *Rome;* **Sicilia,** *Sicily;* **pirus,** *pear-tree.*

It is assumed that the learner knows the names and functions of the parts of speech in English, and the meanings of the common grammatical terms, such as *subject and predicate, case, mood, tense, voice, declension, conjugation,* etc. So much knowledge is absolutely essential for entering upon the study of the following lessons.

LESSON I.

First Declension.

The Stem[1] ends in ă.

GENDER.   The gender is feminine ; but see **13**, 1.

Nominative Singular and Plural.

14.   *Models.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mēnsa, *table.*	mēnsae, *tables.*
puella, *girl.*	puellae, *girls.*
hasta, *spear.*	hastae, *spears.*

a. How does the plural of the Latin noun differ from the singular?   Form the plural of the adjectives below in the same way.

15.   *Vocabulary.*

NOUNS.	ADJECTIVES.
columba, f. *dove.*	alba, *white.*
dea, f. *goddess.*	bona, *good.*
filia, f. *daughter.*	lāta, *wide, broad.*
hasta, f. *spear*, p. 15.	longa, *long.*
mēnsa, f. *table.*	parva, *small.*
Mūsa, f. *Muse.*	tua, *your, yours* (**247**, *a*).
puella, f. *girl.*	
via, f. *road, street.*	

VERBS.	ADVERBS.
est, (*he, she, it*) *is.*	ubi, *where.*
sunt, (*they*) *are.*	-ne, sign of a question (**9**, 3).

[1] The stem is the common base to which certain letters are added   to express the relation of the word to other words.

16.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Columba est alba,** *the dove is white.*
2. **Columbae sunt albae,** *doves are white.*
3. **Estne tua filia parva ?** *is your daughter small ?*
4. **Ubi sunt longae hastae ?** *where are the long spears ?*

a. Observe that the adjectives in the above sentences agree with their nouns in number.

b. In Latin there is no article : **mēnsa** may be translated, *a table, the table,* or *table.*

———

17. 1. Via est longa. 2. Viae sunt longae. 3. Puella est parva. 4. Puellae sunt parvae. 5. Hastae sunt longae. 6. Mēnsa est lāta. 7. Deae sunt bonae. 8. Mūsa est bona. 9. Ubi est filia bona? 10. Suntne columbae parvae? 11. Estne via lāta? 12. Longa via est bona. 13. Longae viae sunt bonae. 14. Suntne longae viae lātae?

18. 1. Where is the little girl? 2. Where are the little girls? 3. Are the girls small? 4. Are the goddesses good? 5. The broad street is long. 6. The white dove is small. 7. The daughters are good. 8. Is the spear a good one[1]? 9. Is the spear long? 10. Are the spears long? 11. The tables are long and broad.

[1] Omit.

ARAE.

LESSON II.

First Declension. — *Continued.*

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

19. *Paradigm.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. tuba, *a trumpet.*	N. tubae, *trumpets.*
G. tubae, *of a trumpet.*	G. tubārum, *of trumpets.*
D. tubae, *to* or *for a trumpet.*	D. tubīs, *to* or *for trumpets.*
Ac. tubam, *a trumpet.*	Ac. tubās, *trumpets.*
Ab. tubā, *with a trumpet.*	Ab. tubīs, *with trumpets.*

a. TERMINATIONS, printed in the paradigm in blacker type, consist of case endings joined with the final letter of the stem. But sometimes the final letter of the stem is lost, and sometimes the case ending.

b. Decline the adjectives below like the nouns.

20. *Vocabulary.*

NOUNS.	ADJECTIVES.
āra, f. *altar.*	grāta, *pleasing, acceptable.*
Minerva,[1] f. *Minerva.*	mea, *my, mine.*
pecūnia, f. *money.*	pulchra, *beautiful.*
poēta, m. *poet* (**13,** 1).	
rēgīna, f. *queen.*	
rosa, f. *rose.*	et, conj. *and.*
tuba, f. *trumpet*, p. 13.	quid, pron. *what?*

VERBS.

amat, *(he, she, it) loves.*	dat, *(he, she, it) gives.*
amant, *(they) love.*	dant, *(they) give.*
habet, *(he, she, it) has.*	laudat, *(he, she, it) praises.*
habent, *(they) have.*	laudant, *(they) praise.*

a. How does the plural of the verb forms differ from the singular?

[1] No plural.

21.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Minerva āram habet,** *Minerva has an altar.*
2. **Poēta tuam fīliam laudat,** *the poet praises your daughter.*
3. **Quid habent Minerva et Mūsae?** *what have Minerva and the Muses?*
4. **Pecūniam meam habent,** *they have my money.*

a. Observe the adjectives **tuam** and **meam.** They agree with their nouns in case as well as in number.

b. Observe the order of the words in each Latin sentence, and compare it with the order in English.

c. Observe the cases. To what case in English does the accusative in these sentences correspond?

d. When the subject of the verb is not expressed, the ending of the verb shows the person and number of the omitted subject.

22. Rule. — *The subject of a finite[1] verb is in the nominative.*

23. Rule. — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.*

---

24. 1. Tua pecūnia est grāta. 2. Quid habent poētae? 3. Meae fīliae rosās albās dant. 4. Datne dea bona pulchram tubam? 5. Puellae pulchrae columbās amant. 6. Minerva et Mūsae ārās habent. 7. Poēta amat columbam parvam. 8. Hastās longās laudat. 9. Pulchrās puellās laudant. 10. Ubi sunt tuae tubae?

25. 1. They praise the broad streets. 2. The beautiful queen has a beautiful rose. 3. Where is the queen and where is the poet? 4. He gives a spear and a

---

[1] That is, in any mood except the infinitive.

trumpet. 5. Your spear is a long one.[1] 6. They have money. 7. What has Minerva? 8. Minerva has a spear. 9. Has the goddess a beautiful altar? 10. Are the tables pleasing?

26. *Colloquium.*

Estne via lāta? Certē (*certainly*), via est lāta et longa. Quid habet puella parva? Puella parva rosam albam habet. Laudantne bonam rēgīnam? Rēgīnam laudant et amant. Ubi est mea fīlia parva? Tua fīlia est in (*in*) viā.

———•◦•———

LESSON III.

First Declension. — *Continued.*

DATIVE.

27. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Poēta rēgīnae rosam dat,** *the poet gives a rose to the queen;* or, *the poet gives the queen a rose.*

2. **Columba alba est puellae,** *there is a white dove to the girl;* that is, *the girl has a white dove.*

3. **Pecūnia poētae grāta est,** *money is acceptable to the poet.*

a. Observe in the first sentence that the *direct object* of **dat** is **rosam.** *What* the poet gives is a rose ; the person *to whom* he gives is **rēgīnae,** representing the *indirect object.*

28. Rule. — *The indirect object is put in the dative.*

b. Observe now the second sentence. The meaning is exactly the same as if it were **puella habet columbam.** The dative thus used is called the *dative of the possessor,* or the *possessive dative.*

[1] Omit.

29. Rule. — *The dative is used with* **est, sunt,** *etc., forms of the verb* **sum** *(516), to denote possession, the thing possessed being the subject.*

ε. The third sentence illustrates a use of the dative with adjectives.

30.   *Vocabulary.*

NOUNS.	VERBS.
agricola, m. *farmer.*	**erat,** *was.*
Britannia, f. *Britain.*	**erant,** *were.*
fābula, f. *story.*	**nārrat,** *tells.*
Galba, m. *Galba.*	**nārrant,** *tell.*
lūna, f. *moon.*	**placet,** *pleases,* } with dative.
silva, f. *forest.*	**placent,** *please,* }

ADJECTIVES.	
	in, prep. with abl., *in, on.*
cāra, *dear.*	**grāta est** = **placet.**
nova, *new.*	**grātae sunt** = **placent.**

Follow the Latin order in the first rendering of Latin sentences into English. That will aid you in making out the meaning ; you can then translate into good English.

31. 1. Agricolae est fīlia. 2. Agricola fīliam habet. 3. Poēta rēgīnae nārrat fābulam. 4. Fābula rēgīnae est grāta. 5. Fābula rēgīnae placet. 6. Parvae puellae agricola dat rosam. 7. Tubae parvīs puellīs placent. 8. In Britanniā erant longae viae. 9. Galba et poēta in silvā erant. 10. Lūna nova erat agricolae grāta.

32. Note the arrangement of words in the preceding exercise.

, *a.* In a Latin sentence the subject is oftener placed first than elsewhere, and the verb (except **est** and **sunt**) oftener comes last than elsewhere.

b. If the subject seems to be more emphatic than any other word, it should be placed first.

c. Of two words that go together, as an adjective and a noun, the more emphatic comes first. The adjective oftener precedes.

d. It follows that there is great freedom in the arrangement of words in a Latin sentence ; but the order must have a meaning. Do not arrange your words at haphazard.

33. Examine these three forms of the fifth sentence of **31** and the translation : —

1. **Fābula rēgīnae placet,** *the* STORY (*not the poem*) *pleases the queen.*

2. **Rēgīnae placet fābula,** *the story pleases the* QUEEN (*not the king*).

3. **Placet fābula rēgīnae,** *the story* PLEASES (*not grieves*) *the queen.*

34. 1.[1] Galba has a daughter. 2. The daughter tells the poet[2] a story. 3. On the altar there[3] was a rose. 4. The new moon pleases[1] the farmer.[4] 5. The Muses were dear to Minerva. 6. My daughters give the farmer some[3] money. 7. And the farmers give my daughters[5] pretty roses. 8. What has the queen? 9. The altars please[1] the goddesses.[5]

[1] Translate in two ways.

[2] Not the acc. Look out for other examples.

[3] Omit.

[4] Dative.

[5] **Dea** and **filia** have **ābus** in the dative and ablative plural : **deābus, filiābus.**
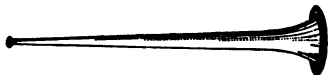
TUBA.

LESSON IV.

First Declension. — *Continued.*

GENITIVE. PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

35. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Vesta erat dea Rōmae,** *Vesta was a goddess of Rome.*

2. **Victōria est Britanniae rēgīna,** *Victoria is queen of Britain.*

3. **Cāra deae est āra Mūsae,** *dear to the goddess is the Muse's altar.*

4. **Fīlia agricolae rosam dat poētae,** *the farmer's daughter gives a rose to the poet.*

a. Point out the genitive in each of the above sentences, and tell what word it limits.

36. Rule. — *A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the genitive.*

b. Examine the first two sentences. **Dea** denotes the same person as **Vesta** the subject ; **rēgīna** the same as the subject **Victōria.** Nouns thus used with **est** and similar verbs are called *predicate nouns.*

37. Rule. — *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

38. *Vocabulary.*

Eurōpa, f. *Europe.*	**Vesta,** f. *Vesta (a goddess).*
fera, f. *wild beast.*	**Victōria,** f. *Victoria.*
Gallia, f. *Gaul.*	——
Graecia, f. *Greece.*	**māgna,** adj. *great.*
Helvētia, f. *Helvetia.*	**quis,** pron. *who ?*
īnsula, f. *island.*	**hodiē,** adv. *to-day.*
Ītalia, f. *Italy.*	**nōn,** adv. *not.*
Rōma, f. *Rome.*	**videt,** verb, *sees.*
terra, f. *land, country.*	**vident,** verb, *see.*

39. 1. Helvētia erat terra Galliae. 2. Gallia erat Eurōpae terra. 3. Ītalia est Eurōpae māgna terra. 4. Vesta et Minerva deae erant Rōmae. 5. Nōnne[1] pulchrae erant Vestae et Minervae ārae? 6. Ubi sunt hodiē Graeciae deae? 7. Graecia erat terra Mūsārum. 8. Nōnne sunt puellārum rosae māgnae? 9. Britannia est Eurōpae īnsula. 10. Quis viās Britanniae nōn laudat?

a. In which sentences does the genitive precede the word which it limits? Account for its position.

40. 1. Italy and Greece are countries of Europe. 2. The roads of Greece are not wide and long. 3. Are the roads of the island long? 4. Who sees my daughters? 5. The queen sees the farmers' daughters. 6. She gives the beautiful girl money. 7. Galba has a trumpet. 8. Who sees wild beasts in Italy to-day? 9. They see the new moon. 10. Dear to the poet are the farmer's woods.

41. *Colloquium.*

Estne hodiē in Britanniā rēgīna? Certē, Vīctōria est rēgīna in Britanniā.

Fīliās habetne rēgīna? Fīliās habet rēgīna.

Ubi sunt ferae māgnae? Sunt in Āfricā et in Āsiā.

Nōnne sunt ferae in Eurōpā? Nōn sunt māgnae ferae.

Quid puellīs placet? Rosae albae placent puellīs.

---

[1] **Nōnne** expects the answer *yes.*
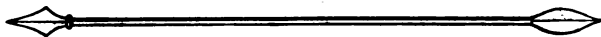
HASTA.

LESSON V.

Second Declension.

THE STEM ENDS IN ŏ.

APPOSITION.

42. GENDER. — Nouns of the second declension ending in *um* are neuter ; most others are masculine. But see **13, 2**.

43. *Paradigms.*

	Hortus, *garden.*			Dōnum, *gift.*	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	hortus	hortī	N.	dōnum	dōna
G.	hortī	hortōrum	G.	dōnī	dōnōrum
D.	hortō	hortīs	D.	dōnō	dōnīs
Ac.	hortum	hortōs	Ac.	dōnum	dōna
Ab.	hortō	hortīs	Ab.	dōnō	dōnīs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension has a special form in *ĕ*: **hortĕ**. The vocative of other nouns is the same in form as the nominative.

b. The vocative is the case of address: **Mārce,** *Marcus.*

c. What cases of **hortus** are alike in the singular? What in the plural? What case of the singular is like a plural case? What cases of the plural have endings like those of **tuba (19)**?

44. *Paradigm illustrating Apposition.*

N. Mārcus amīcus, *Marcus, a friend.*
G. Mārcī amīcī, *of Marcus, a friend.*
D. Mārcō amīcō, *to Marcus, a friend.*
Ac. Mārcum amīcum, *Marcus, a friend.*
Ab. ā Mārcō amīcō, *by Marcus, a friend.*
V. Mārce, amīce, *Marcus, (my) friend.*

a. When a descriptive noun is joined to another, meaning the same person or thing, as **amīcus** to **Mārcus**, it is called an *appositive.*

45. Rule. — *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

a. Read again the first two model sentences of Lesson IV. You will see that the *predicate nominative* resembles an *appositive.* Wherein do they differ?

46. *Vocabulary.*

amīcus, -ī, m. *friend.*	**dōnum, -ī,** n. *gift.*
cibus, -ī, m. *food.*	**frūmentum, -ī,** n. *grain.*
dominus, -ī, m. *lord, master.*	**pīlum, -ī,** n. *javelin,* p. 102.
equus, -ī, m. *horse.*	**pōculum, -ī,** n. *cup,* p. 69.
hortus, -ī, m. *garden.*	**vīnum, -ī,** n. *wine.*
inimīcus, -ī, m. *enemy.*	**dēlectat,** *delights.*
nauta, -ae, m. *sailor.*	**dēlectant,** *delight.*

47. 1. Mārcus amīcus est dominī. 2. Mārcus, agricolae amīcus, erat nauta. 3. Puella pōculum, dōnum amīcī, habet. 4. Equī erant Galbae, agricolae. 5. Dōnum dēlectat poētam, rēgīnae amīcum. 6. Agricolae frūmentum equīs dant. 7. Cibus equōrum est frūmentum. 8. In pōculō est vīnum. 9. Columba grāta est poētae, Mārcī amīcō. 10. Ubi erant tubae et pīla, dōna amīcōrum? 11. In Helvētiā, Galliae terrā, erant silvae māgnae. 12. Mārce, amīce, quid est in pōculō nautae? 13. Nauta vīnum in pōculō habet.

48. 1. Where are the farmer's friends to-day? 2. Who sees wild beasts in Italy, a country of Europe? 3. Do the javelins and the cups delight the enemies? 4. They

tell Marcus, the sailor, a new story.   5. Marcus praises
the good story.   6. To the maiden, daughter of the
master, he gives a white rose.   7. The rose was the gift
of a friend.   8. Friend, the little girl, your daughter,
is in the garden.   9. Do not[1] the maidens love the
farmer's garden ?   10. The enemies of the farmers are
in the forests of the island.

--- ❖ ---

LESSON VI.

First and Second Declensions.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

49. Adjectives of the first and second declensions
have three terminations to mark the different gen-
ders : **bonus,** masculine ; **bona,** feminine ; **bonum,**
neuter.   The masculine is declined like **hortus, the**
feminine like **tuba,** and the neuter like **dōnum.**

a. For the full declension of **bonus,** see **500.**

50.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Hortus est mágnus.**   5. **Hastam longam habet.**
2. **Hortī sunt mágnī.**   6. **Hastās longās habent.**
3. **Dōnum est grātum.**   7. **Agricola est bonus.**
4. **Dōna sunt grāta.**   8. **Agricolae sunt bonī.**

a. Adjectives are used in six of the above sentences, as in
the first lesson, after **est** and **sunt.**   So used, they are called
predicate adjectives.   Compare predicate nouns (**35**).

---

[1] See p. 15, note 1.

51. *Paradigm.*

Nauta bonus, *good sailor.*

N.	nauta bonus	nautae bonī
G.	nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
D.	nautae bonō	nautīs bonīs
Ac.	nautam bonum	nautās bonōs
Ab.	nautā bonō	nautīs bonīs

52. In the first six of the model sentences, an adjective qualifying a noun has the same *termination* as its noun. But observe 7 and 8 and the paradigm **nauta bonus.**

53. Rule. — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

a. Decline **agricola validus,** *strong farmer;* **grātus poēta,** *pleasing poet.*

54. *Vocabulary.*

carrus, -ī, m. *wagon,* p. 20.
incola, -ae, m. *inhabitant.*
oppidum, -ī, n. *town.*
rēmus, -ī, m. *oar.*
servus, -ī, m. *slave, servant.*
ventus, -ī, m. *wind.*

in, prep. with acc., *into.*

clārus, -a, -um, *famous.*
multus, -a, -um, *much.*
multī (pl. of **multus**), **-ae, -a,**
  many.
perītus, -a, -um, *skilful.*
validus, -a, -um, *strong.*

portat, *bears, carries.*
portant, *bear, carry.*

ADJECTIVES ALREADY USED IN THE FEMININE.

albus, -a, -um, *white.*
bonus, -a, -um, *good.*
cārus, -a, -um, *dear.*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing.*
lātus, -a, -um, *wide.*

longus, -a, -um, *long.*
māgnus, -a, -um, *large.*
meus, -a, -um, *my, mine.*
novus, -a, -um, *new.*
parvus, -a, -um, *small.*

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, thine, your, yours.*

55. 1. Nōnne agricola bonus hortum bonum habet?
2. Agricolae bonō est hortus māgnus. 3. Mārcus filiae
dat pōcula, pulchra dōna. 4. Nautae perītō sunt rēmī
māgnī. 5. Carrī agricolārum erant validī. 6. Māgnī
ventī nautīs nōn sunt grātī. 7. Poēta clārus Mūsīs placet.
8. Equī dominī frūmentum in oppida portant. 9. Multī
hortī in oppidō sunt. 10. Multum cibum in oppidum
portant equī et servī.

56. 1. Galba is a sturdy[1] farmer. 2. He has much
grain, a food pleasant to horses. 3. His[2] horses carry
their[2] master into town. 4. The inhabitants of the town
see Galba and the horses. 5. Marcus, where is your
slave to-day? 6. He is in the garden. 7. And is telling[8]
the little girl[4] a story. 8. The pleasing tale[1] delights the
girl. 9. Where is the garden, Marcus, my[2] dear friend?
10. It is in Britain, the land of skilful sailors. 11. Are
the inhabitants of Britain sailors?

[1] Occasionally words occur in
the English exercises which are
purposely not given as definitions
in the vocabularies, but the pupil
will generally understand what
Latin word is meant.
[2] Omit.   [8] *Tells.*
[4] Not accusative.

CARRUS.

LESSON VII.

Second Declension. — *Continued.*

57. *Paradigms.*

Puer, *boy;* **Ager,** *field;* **Vir,** *man.*

	Sing.	*Plu.*	*Sing.*	*Plu.*	*Sing.*	*Plu.*
N.	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
G.	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum	virī	virōrum
D.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs
Ac.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs	virum	virōs
Ab.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs

a. Observe that the endings of **puer** and **ager** are everywhere the same. But **puer** keeps the *e* of the nominative ; **ager** drops it, except in the nominative.

58. Most nouns and adjectives in **-er** of the second declension are declined like **ager;** that is, they drop the **e** of the nominative.

59. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** contract the genitive ending **iĭ** to **ī ·: cōnsi'lium,** *gen.* **cōnsi'lī,** *advice, plan.* **Fīlius,** *son,* and proper names in **-ius** contract **-ie** in the vocative to **ī : fīlī,** *(my) son ;* **Mercu'rī,** *Mercury.* But the place of the accent is not changed. See **495.**

60. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Puer fīlius est virī,** *the boy is the man's son.*
2. **Vir fīliō dat cōnsilium,** *the man gives his son advice.*
3. **Galbae, agricolae, sunt agrī multī,** *Galba, the farmer, has many fields.*
4. **Fīlī, estne poēta Mūsae cārus ?** *my son, is the poet dear to the Muse ?*

a. The first sentence illustrates the *genitive* and the *predicate nominative.* What does each of the other sentences illustrate?

61.   *Vocabulary.*

ager, agrī, m. *field.*	**vir, virī,** m. *man.*
cōnsilium, -ī, n. *advice, plan.*	
Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia.*	——
fīlius, -ī, m. *son.*	**aeger, aegra, aegrum,** *sick.*
līber, -brī, m. *book.*	**niger, nigra, nigrum,** *black.*
līberī,[1] **-ōrum** (pl.), m. *children.*	**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,**
magister, -trī, m. *master.*	*beautiful, pretty.*
puer, -erī, m. *boy.*	**līber, -era, -erum,** *free.*
Sextus, -ī, m. *Sextus.*	**miser, -era, -erum,** *wretched.*
	nam, conj. *for.*

      dominus, *master of a household* or *slaves.*

      magister, *a superior, director;* hence, *master of a school.*

      puerī, general word for *children.*

      līberī, *children of free parents.*

----

62. 1. Librī puerī sunt in mēnsā. 2. Cōnsilium virōrum clārōrum erat bonum. 3. Sextī līberī sunt aegrī. 4. Cornēlia, poētae fīlia, librōs habet pulchrōs. 5. Servus miser nōn multum cibum habet. 6. Incolae līberī oppidum līberum habent. 7. Nigrī equī agricolārum in agrīs sunt. 8. Quis habet carrōs validōs et equōs nigrōs? 9. Nōnne est aegrō nautae cāra pecūnia? 10. Estne Cornēliae vīnum parvō[2] in pōculō?

----

[1] The plural of the adjective used as a noun.

[2] Adjective, preposition, noun, is often the order, where, as here, the three are combined. What is the English order?

63. 1. The book is pleasing to the master. 2. The poet's books are pleasing to the master's son. 3. The poor slave has a long spear. 4. Sextus gives the sick boy a beautiful book. 5. The oar and the javelin please the skilful man.[1] 6. The son of Sextus is dear to Galba, the farmer. 7. The black boy is a servant of the free man. 8. They praise the farmer's black horse. 9. For it carries the sick girl into the town. 10. And many inhabitants of the town tell their children[2] the story.

LESSON VIII.

The Verb sum.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

64. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive of **sum** (516).

---

65. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, eram, erō. 5. Es, erās, eris. 6. Estis, erātis, eritis. 7. Es, este, esse.

a. In the preceding lessons verb forms have been used only in the third person : **est, erat** for the singular ; **sunt, erant** for the plural. The forms in the exercise above show that the ending changes to denote person as well as number. The first and second persons as subjects are not commonly expressed.

Rule. — *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

[1] See 33.   [2] See 56, note 4.

66. 1. I am, we are. 2. I was, we were. 3. I shall be, we shall be. 4. He is, they are. 5. He was, they were. 6. He will be, they will be. 7. You are, you were. 8. You will be. 9. Be thou, be you. 10. To be.

67. *Vocabulary.*

aqua, -ae, f. *water.*

aurum, -ī, n. *gold.*

deus, -ī, m. *god* (499).

Mercurius, -ī, m. *Mercury* (59).

nūntius, -ī, m. *messenger* (59).

scūtum, -ī, n. *shield,* p. 76.

somnus, -ī, m. *sleep.*

statua, -ae, f. *statue.*

————

aureus, -a, -um, *golden.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, *tired, very tired.*

vocat, *calls, summons.*

vocant, *call, summon.*

68. 1. Amīcus Mercu'rī erō. 2. Nam Mercurius nūntius erat deōrum. 3. Servus est inimīcus pulchrī Mercurī. 4. Tū (*thou*), O miser serve, es Minervae inimīcus. 5. Amīcī Mercurī nūntī erimus. 6. Tū (*thou*), O puer, agricolae validī es fīlius. 7. Puerī bonī, este hodiē amīcī miserī equī. 8. Somnus puerō erit grātus. 9. Līberī magistrī dēfessī erunt. 10. Minervae in oppidō erat āra. 11. Dēfessō equō grāta est aqua. 12. Nūntius incolās vocat oppidī.

69. 1. Minerva had[1] a golden statue. 2. There was gold on the statue of Minerva. 3. Who has a golden shield? 4. Was not[2] Mercury messenger of the gods? 5. A girl gives a sick sailor some[3] wine and water. 6. The wine she carries in a pretty cup. 7. He praises the pretty cup and the wine. 8. The water he does not care for. 9. The maiden and the sailor were inhabitants

---

[1] Use a form of **sum**.   [2] **Nōnne.**   [3] **Omit.**

of Britain. 10. Britain is a large island and has many towns and fields.

70.　　　　　　　　*Colloquium.*

DUO PUERĪ.
two

Ubi est Carolus hodiē?　Nōnne est in scholā?
　　Charles　　　　　　　　　　school

Minimē.　Est in fluviō; nam habet cymbam parvam,
By no means　　　　river　　　　　boat

et libenter nāvigat.
　　gladly sails = likes sailing

Unde Carolō est cymba?　(Where did Charles get a boat?)
whence

Ab avunculō, nam avunculus Carolum amat.
from　uncle

Quid in cymbā portat Carolus?

Nēsciō; sine dubiō cibum et pōculum; nam in
I don't know　without　doubt

animō habet . . .
mind

Quid in animō habet?

Valē, bone amīce, crās　patēbit.
good-by　　　　　to-morrow　it will be open = the secret will be out

CYMBA.

LESSON IX.

First Conjugation. — Ā-Verbs.

Amō (stem **amā**), *love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS:[1] **amō**, *I love;* [2] **amāre**, *to love;* **amāvī**, *I loved;* [3] **amātus**, *loved.*

71. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **amō** (511).

72. 1. Amat, amābat, amābit. 2. Amātur, amābātur, amābitur. 3. Amant, amābant, amābunt. 4. Amantur, amābantur, amābuntur. 5. Amō, amābam, amābō. 6. Amor, amābar, amābor. 7. Amāmus, amāmur. 8. Amābāmus, amābāmur. 9. Amābimus, amābimur. 10. Amā, amāre. 11. Amāte, amāminī. 12. Amāre, amārī.

a. Notice how frequently *r* and *ur* mark forms as passive.

73. Like **amō**, inflect in the same moods and tenses the following :

dēlectō	dēlectāre	dēlectāvī	dēlectātus, *delight.*
laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātus, *praise.*
nārrō	nārrāre	nārrāvī	nārrātus, *tell.*
portō	portāre	portāvī	portātus, *carry.*

a. The stem is found by dropping *re* of the infinitive.

[1] The present indicative, the present infinitive, the perfect indicative, and the perfect participle are called, from their importance, the *principal parts.* The conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before -re in the present infinitive active. See **337**.

[2] Also *do love, am loving.*

[3] Also *have loved.*

74. 1. He praises, he is praised. 2. He was praising, he was praised. 3. He will praise, he will be praised. 4. They are praising, they are praised. 5. They were praising, they were praised. 6. They will be praising, they will be praised. 7. To praise, to be praised. 8. Praise (sing.), praise (pl.). 9. They do praise, they will praise.

———◦◦◦———

LESSON X.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

75. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Rēgīna agricolam laudat,** *the queen praises the farmer.*
2. **Agricola ā** (or ab) **rēgīnā laudātur,** *the farmer is praised by the queen.*

a. Observe the changes in turning the active into the passive. The object of the active becomes the subject of the passive ; the subject (that is, the *doer* or *agent*) of the active is expressed with the passive by the ablative with **ā** or **ab.**

76. Rule. — *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab.**

a. **Ab** is used before vowels or **h, ā** or **ab** before consonants.

———————

77. 1. Vir perītum puerum laudat. 2. Puer perītus ā virō laudātur. 3. Galba Mārcum amīcum amābat. 4. Mārcus ā Galbā amābātur. 5. Magister fābulam clāram līberīs nārrābit. 6. Fābula clāra līberīs ā magistrō nārrābitur. 7. Miserī servī dominum amābunt. 8. Ā servīs miserīs amābitur dominus. 9. Equus niger mul-

tum frūmentum et aquam in oppidum portat.   10. Frū-
mentum in oppidum ab servō nigrō portātur.   11. Nūntī
cōnsilium nārrābātur ā Galbā.   12. Nārratne Galba nūntī
cōnsilia ?

78. 1. Sextus loves the boy, his son.   2. The boy.
is called by Sextus.   3. The statues of the gods were
praised by the free man.   4. The free man was praising
the statues of the gods.   5. The tired messenger was
carrying a golden shield.   6. A golden shield was
carried by the messenger.   7. We shall tell a story to
the inhabitants of the island.   8. Shall you carry javelins
into the forest ?

79.   *Colloquium.*

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.
Father and Little Son.

P. Quae, filiole, hodiē in scholā tractābantur ?
     what   little son   were discussed

F. Tractābantur cāsus ablātīvus et verbum *amō.*
                   case   word.

P. Quid sīgnificat Anglicē verbum *amō ?*
          means   in English

F. Verbum *amō* sīgnificat *love.*

P. Dē ablātīvō quoque mihi nārrā.
     about   also   me

F. Rēgulam dē ablātīvō tibi nārrābō.
     rule   you I will tell

P. Rēgulamne tibi dedit magister ?
                    did give

F. Certē, rēgulam dē ablātīvō *agentis.*   Ante ablā-
     certainly   of the agent   before
tīvum *agentis* semper praepositiō *ā* vel *ab* pōnitur.
                       preposition   or   is placed

P. Optimē, mī puer ; tibi erit rubrum mālum.
     well done   my   red   apple

LESSON XI.

The Verb sum. — *Continued.*

THE INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

80. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive of **sum (516).**

———————

81. 1. Fuit, fuerat, fuerit. 2. Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint. 3. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 4. Fuerō, fueram, fui. 5. Fuerās, fueris, fuistī. 6. Fuistis, fueritis, fuerātis. 7. Esse, fuisse.

82. 1. He has been, they have been. 2. He had been, they had been. 3. He will have been, they will have been. 4. To have been, to be.

83.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Nauta ventō et rēmīs portātur,** *the sailor is borne by wind and oars.*
2. **Virī tubā vocābantur aureā,** *the men were summoned by a golden trumpet.*
3. **Agrī ab agricolā arātrō novō arantur,** *the fields are ploughed by a farmer with his new plough.*

a. Observe that the ablatives **ventō, rēmīs, tubā,** and **arātrō** answer the questions *by what? with what? by means of what?* The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of instrument or means.*

84. **Rule.** — *The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.*

b. The third sentence illustrates the difference between the ablative of the agent and the ablative of means. How are they differently expressed in Latin? (See **76.**)

85.   *Vocabulary.*

arātrum, -ī, n. *plough*, p. 34.	Graecus, -ī, m. *a Greek.*
arma, -ōrum, n. (pl.) *arms.*	Rōmānus, -ī, m. *a Roman.*
bellum, -ī, n. *war.*	sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow*, p. 155.
gladius, -ī, m. *sword*, p. 67.	templum, -ī, n. *temple*, p. 93.

     appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, *name, call.*
     arō, arāre, arāvī, arātus, *plough.*
     fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus, *put to flight, rout.*
     ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī, ōrnātus, *adorn, deck.*
     superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus, *overcome, outdo.*
     vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātus, *wound.*

---

86. 1. Servus fuerat vir līber. 2. Galbae (*dative*) fuerant equī et carrī. 3. Nova lūna fuit pulchra. 4. In īnsulā fuerant multae silvae. 5. Nōnne ager arātrō ā virō arābitur? 6. Inimīcus gladiō et sagittīs vulnerātur. 7. Virī equōs hastīs et sagittīs in bellō vulnerābant. 8. Minervae statua aurō ōrnābātur. 9. Poētae aegrō somnus erit grātus in hortō. 10. Rōmānī oppidum appellābant Rōmam.[1] 11. Ā Rōmānīs oppidum appellābātur Rōma.[2] 12. Graecī nōn amābant Rōmānōs. 13. Rōmānī ā Graecīs nōn amābantur. 14. Rōmānī Graecōs in bellō armīs fugābant et superābant. 15. Graecī Rōmānōrum armīs fugābantur.

87. 1. Where have we been? 2. Marcus, the friend of Galba, had been a sailor. 3. Fields are ploughed

---

[1] Predicate accusative.   [2] Predicate nominative.

by farmers with ploughs and horses. 4. The pretty girl decked the cup with roses. 5. Was not the cup decked with roses by the pretty girl? 6. Arrows and spears are the arms of the slaves. 7. With swords and arrows we shall overcome the men.

———•◦•———

LESSON XII.

First Conjugation. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

88. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **amō (511).**

89. The compound forms of the passive are made by combining forms of **sum** with the perfect passive participle. The participle (declined like **bonus**), agrees in gender and number with the subject : **amāta est,** *she was loved;* **amātum est,** *it was loved;* **amātī sunt,** *they* (masc.) *were loved.*

———————

90. 1. Amāvit, amāverat, amāverit. 2. Amātus est, amātus erat, amātus erit. 3. Amāvērunt, amāverant, amāverint. 4. Amāvī, amātus sum. 5. Amāverāmus, amātī erāmus. 6. Amāve'rimus, amātī erimus. 7. Amāvisse, amātus esse.

91. 1. He has been praised, had been praised, will have been praised. 2. They have been praised, had

been praised, will have been praised. 3. We (masc.)
have been praised, had been praised, shall have been
praised.   4. We (fem.) have been praised, had been.
praised, shall have been praised.

92.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Agricola agrum cum cūrā arat,** *the farmer ploughs his
field with care (carefully).*

2. **Agricola agrum mágná cum cūrā arat,** *the farmer
ploughs his field with great care.*

3. **Agricola agrum mágná cūrā arat,** *the farmer ploughs
his field with great care.*

a. Observe how *manner* is expressed in the above Latin
sentences : (1) **cum cūrā** ; (2) **mágná cum cūrā** ; (3) **mágná
cūrā.**   In Latin as in English the manner of an action may be
expressed by an adverb : **fidēliter,** *faithfully.*

93. Rule. — *The* **manner** *of an action is denoted
by the ablative, usually with* **cum** *; but* **cum** *may
be omitted if an adjective is used with the
ablative.*

94.   *Vocabulary.*

audācia, -ae, f. *daring, bold-
    ness.*
cūra, -ae, f. *care.*
dīligentia, -ae, f. *industry.*
gaudium, -ī, n. *joy, gladness* (59).
patientia, -ae, f. *patience.*

studium, -ī, n. *zeal, eager-
    ness* (59).
vicīnus, -ī, m. *neighbor.*
piger, pigra, pigrum, *lazy.*
cum, prep. with abl., *with.*
sed, conj., *but.*

   aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus, *build.*
   agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātus, *chase, drive.*
   labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātus, *toil, suffer.*
   pūgnō, pūgnāre, pūgnāvī, pūgnātus, *fight.*

95. 1. Rōmānī māgnā cum audāciā in bellō pūgnāvē-
runt. 2. Oppida multa in Ītaliā aedificāvērunt. 3. Cum
cūrā ā Rōmānis aedificāta sunt oppida. 4. Cūrae somnum
fugāverant. 5. Puer piger equum pigrum agitāvit. 6. Servī
miserī māgnā patientiā labōrāverant. 7. Multō cum stu-
diō ā virīs agitātae erant ferae. 8. Vir bonus labōrat
cum dīligentiā et cūrā. 9. Māgnō gaudiō novōs librōs
hodiē vident puerī. 10. Rosīs ōrnāta erat puella.

96. 1. The inhabitants were eagerly[1] building a temple.
2. A temple had been built zealously by the inhabitants.
3. The boys toiled industriously and patiently. 4. The
Greeks had fought daringly, but were overwhelmed by
their neighbors. 5. The sick children were borne care-
fully into the temple. 6. Joyfully they see the altar of
the goddess. 7. The altar had been adorned with roses.
8. On the altar there was a golden cup, the gift of a sick
man.

———◆◇◆———

LESSON XIII.

97.   Reading Lesson.

THE ROMANS AND THE SABINES.

Rōma, pulchrum Ītaliae oppidum, ā Rōmulō aedi-
ficāta est. Incolae Rōmae igitur[2] appellātī sunt Rōmānī.
Validī virī erant Rōmānī et patriam māximē amābant.
Saepe cum Sabīnis, vīcīnīs, pūgnābant prō patriā et
saepe armīs in bellō superābant. Ōlim victōria diū erat
dubia. Nam Sabīnī arma bona habēbant,[3] et pīlīs longīs

---

[1] *With eagerness.*   placed after one or more words
[2] Igitur is *postpositive,* that is, is   in a sentence.   [3] *Had.*

māgnā cum audāciā pūgnāvērunt. Sed fugātī sunt ā
Rōmānīs et multī sagittīs sunt vulnerātī. Cāra Rōmānīs
erat victōria.

98. 1. Tell the story, boys, to the master. 2. The
boys told the story to the master. 3. Romulus built a
fine town in Italy. 4. He called the inhabitants Ro-
mans. 5. The Sabines were neighbors of the Romans.
6. And they often fought with Romulus and the Romans.
7. Once they fought a long time with swords and spears.
8. The victory was doubtful, but the Romans wounded
and put many to flight.

99.   *Vocabulary.*

diū, adv. *for a long time,
  long.*
dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful.*
igitur, conj. *therefore.*
māximē, adv. *especially.*
ōlim, adv. *once upon a time,
  once, formerly.*

patria, -ae, f. *country.*
prō, prep. with abl., *in behalf
  of, for.*
Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus.*
Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. *the Sabines.*
saepe, adv. *often.*
victōria, -ae, f. *victory.*
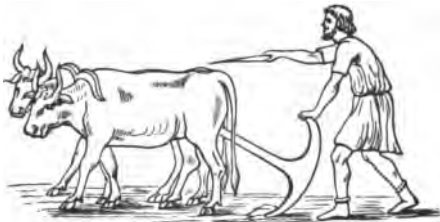
. Aratrum Antiquum.
Nudus ara, sere nudus.—*Vergil.*

LESSON XIV.

The Demonstratives hic and ille.

100.   *Paradigms.*

hĭc, *this.*   ĭlle, *that.*

SINGULAR.

N.	hĭc	haec	hōc	N.	ĭlle	ĭlla	ĭllud
G.	hūĭus	hūĭus	hūĭus	G.	ĭllīus	ĭllīus	ĭllīus
D.	huĭc	huĭc	huĭc	D.	ĭllī	ĭllī	ĭllī
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	Ac.	ĭllum	ĭllam	ĭllud
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	Ab.	ĭllō	ĭllā	ĭllō

PLURAL.

N.	hī	hae	haec	N.	ĭllī	ĭllae	ĭlla
G.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	G.	ĭllōrum	ĭllārum	ĭllōrum
D.	hīs	hīs	hīs	D.	ĭllīs	ĭllīs	ĭllīs
Ac.	hōs	hās	haec	Ac.	ĭllōs	ĭllās	ĭlla
Ab.	hīs	hīs	hīs	Ab.	ĭllīs	ĭllīs	ĭllīs

a. See how closely the plural forms correspond to those of nouns of the first and second declensions. What resemblances do you discover in the singular?

b. Hĭc is applied to what is near the speaker in *place*, *time*, or *thought*, and hence may be called the demonstrative of the first person: hĭc equus, *this horse (near me* or *belonging to me).*

c. Ille is applied to what is relatively remote from the speaker in *place*, *time*, or *thought*, and hence may be called the demonstrative of the third person: ĭlle equus, *that horse (yonder).*

d. Ille, agreeing with a noun and commonly placed after it, sometimes means *that well-known, that famous.*

e. Hīc and ille are sometimes used without a noun, in contrast : hīc, *the latter ;* ille, *the former.*

f. The forms of hīc and ille sometimes mean *he, she, it.*

101.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Hīc puer est laetus, illa puella est maesta,** *this boy is merry, that girl is sad.*

2. **Dominus et servus sunt amīcī; ille est albus, hīc niger,** *the master and the servant are friends ; the former is white, the latter black.*

3. **Hōc dōnum deae est grātum, illud deō,** *this gift is pleasing to the goddess, that one to the god.*

a. From the above remarks and model sentences it is plain that hīc and ille have two distinct uses : (1) as *adjectives* in agreement with nouns ; (2) alone, as *pronouns.* They are, therefore, sometimes *demonstrative adjectives*, sometimes *demonstrative pronouns.*

102.   *Vocabulary.*

Aeduī, -ōrum, m. *the Aeduans.*	**laetus, -a, -um,** *glad.*
fēmina, -ae, f. *woman.*	**maestus, -a, -um,** *sad.*
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *inhabit, live.*	**nunc,** adv. *now.*
	pūgna, -ae, f. *battle.*
Helvētiī, -ōrum, m. (pl.) *the Helvetians.*	**-que,** conj. *and* (9, 3).
	tum, adv. *then.*

---

103. 1. Aeduī et Helvētiī in terrā Galliā [1] ōlim habitābant.   2. Illī fuērunt Rōmānōrum amīcī, hī inimīcī. 3. Ubi sunt nunc illī amīcī inimīcīque ?   4. Ōlim magister studium dīligentiamque illīus puerī et hūius puellae laudāvit.   5. Illī igitur hunc gladium, huīc illud pōcu-

---

[1] An appositive.

lum dat. 6. Nōnne dominus huīc servō dēfessō parvum dōnum dat? nam cum patientiā labōrāvit. 7. Fuitne maesta illa fēmina? 8. Haec fēmina laeta, illa maesta fuit. 9. Nautae illam lūnam novam māgnō cum gaudiō vident. 10. Agricola illōs agrōs hōc novō arātrō arābit. 11. Et fīlius illīus agrĭcolae equōs pigrōs agitābit.

104. 1. The Helvetians fought with the Romans. 2. The former fought for their[1] women and children. 3. The latter fought often for victory.[2] 4. But victory was not long doubtful in those battles. 5. For the Romans overcame the Helvetians. 6. Then were those poor women in Helvetia sad. 7. For the men of that land had been wounded. 8. The children of those men had[3] no[4] food.

———◆◇◆———

LESSON XV.

The Interrogative Pronoun.

105. *Paradigm.*

quis? *who? which? what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūīus	cūīus	cūīus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

[1] Omit.

[2] For victory = victōriae causā.

[3] A form of sum.

[4] Say *not.*

106.   *Table of Meanings for Reference.*

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

		NEUTER.	
N.	who ?	which ?	what ?
G.	of whom ?	of which ?	of what ? whose ?
D.	to *or* for whom ?	to *or* for which ?	to *or* for what ?
Ac.	whom ?	which ?	what ?
Ab.	by, *etc.*, whom ?	by, *etc.*, which ?	by, *etc.*, what ?

a. The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender. They should be referred to only when the meaning of a sentence is not clear after faithful effort. The learner should accustom himself, in making out the meaning of the Latin, to pronounce any Latin word, the sense of which is not evident, as a part of his English sentence. For example, taking sentence 14 under 108, if the meaning of cūius is not clear, say, "cūius arms has that boy?" Probably this would suggest, " whose arms has that boy ? "

107.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Quis amat patriam ?**   *Who loves his country ?*
2. **Quis vir amat patriam ?**   *What man loves his country ?*
3. **Quid amat vir ?**   *What does the man love ?*
4. **Quae dōna puellae sunt grāta ?**   *What gifts are pleasing to the girl ?*

a. Observe that **quis** in the first sentence and **quid** in the third are used as *interrogative pronouns;* that **quis** in the second sentence and **quae** in the fourth are used as *interrogative adjectives.*

b. But **quod** is always used in place of **quid** as an interrogative *adjective*, and often **quī** in place of **quis**; **Quod dōnum puellae est grātum? Quī vir patriam amat?**
c. When forms of the interrogative pronoun are used as adjectives, they agree with their nouns like other adjectives.

108. 1. Quī hōc templum aedificāvērunt? 2. Quī virī hōc templum aedificāvērunt? 3. Quid est in illō templō? 4. Quae fēmina nōn amat līberōs? 5. Cui dat Mārcus hōc pōculum? 6. Quibus virīs nōn est cāra patria? 7. Quōs agrōs arat ille agricola? 8. Quem laudātis? 9. Quid in pōculō habet servus? 10. Quam puellam magister laudat? 11. Ā quō illī agrī sunt arātī? 12. Quō arātrō illōs agrōs agricola arāvit? 13. Ā quibus superātī sunt Rōmānī? 14. Cūius arma puer ille habet?

109. 1. Who[1] was a messenger of the gods? 2. Whose messenger was Mercury? 3. Whose shield has that boy? 4. To whom does he give this shield? 5. Whom have you overcome? 6. With what arms have you overcome that man? 7. By what men was this temple built? 8. By whom was this temple built?

[1] **Ne** is not used in a question that begins with an interrogative pronoun or other interrogative word.

ROSTRA.

LESSON XVI.

The Relative Pronoun.

110.   *Paradigm.*

qui, *who, which, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

111.   *Table of Meanings for Reference.*

a. The meanings are not tabulated with reference to gender.

> N. who, which, that.
> G. of whom, of which, whose.
> D. to *or* for whom, to *or* for which.
> Ac. whom, which, that.
> Ab. by, *etc.*, whom, which.

112.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Puer quī laudātur est laetus,** *the boy who is praised is glad.*

2. **Puellae quās laudāmus sunt laetae,** *the girls whom we praise are glad.*

3. **Librī quōs laudāmus sunt bonī,** *the books that we praise are good.*

4. **Cōnsilium quod vir dat laudāmus,** *the advice which the man gives we praise.*

a. Observe that the relative has the same gender and number as its antecedent, and that the case of the relative is

sometimes the same as that of the antecedent and sometimes different. In 1, **quī** is subject of **laudātur**; in 2 and 3, **quās** and **quōs** are objects of **laudāmus**; in 4, **quod** is object of **dat**.

113. Rule. — *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.*

---

114. 1. Servus, quī agrum agricolae arat, est dēfessus. 2. Illī equī, quibus servus hunc agrum arat, sunt nigrī. 3. Dominus, cūius servus in hōc agrō labōrat, est in hortō. 4. Puerī, quōrum librōs magister habet, sunt pigrī. 5. Laudāmus illa dōna quae puer puellae dat. 6. Puer, quem laudāmus, est laetus. 7. Vir, cuī sunt multī rēmī, est nauta. 8. Fābulae quās nārrāvī hōs puerōs dēlectāvērunt.

115. 1. This advice which the man gives is not pleasing. 2. Those men, whose town was in Italy, were Romans. 3. Those slaves, to whom the master gives wine, have worked with diligence. 4. The boy by whom the horses were driven is a farmer's son. 5. The girl who is tired is often sad.

Review of Interrogative and Relative.

116. *Vocabulary.*

Duīlius, -ī, m. *Duilius* (59).
forum, -ī, n. *forum.*
Poenus, -ī, m. *a Carthaginian.*
praeda, -ae, f. *booty.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back, win, gain.*
rōstrum, -ī, n. *beak of a ship,* p. 39.

117. 1. Quis forum Rōmānum rōstrīs ōrnāvit?
2. Forum ōrnāvit Duīlius ille, quī māgnam victōriam
reportāvit.   3. Quam victōriam reportāvit Duīlius?
4. Poenōs superāvit, quōrum patria in Āfricā fuit.
5. Quibus armīs pūgnāvit Duīlius? 6. Duīlius et Rō-
mānī gladiīs pīlīsque pūgnāvērunt.   7. Quibus[1] erat illa
praeda, quam victōriā reportāvit Duīlius? 8. Praeda
erat Rōmānīs ā quibus est laudātus Duīlius.

118. 1. Duilius once gained a great victory.   2. He
brought back many beaks of ships, with which he
adorned the forum.   3. Duilius, where did you gain
that booty?   4. Tell the story to those boys and these
girls.   5. " That story," quoth[2] Duilius, " is a long one.
6. And I am very tired to-day."

———◦∞◦———

LESSON XVII.

The Demonstrative is.

119.   *Paradigm.*

is, *that, this;* also *he, she, it.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	**is**	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G.	**ēius**	**ēius**	**ēius**	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Ac.	**eum**	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
AB.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

a. **Is** as a demonstrative adjective is an unemphatic *that* or
this. On the one hand it approaches **ille**, on the other, but
less nearly, **hīc.**

———

[1] Dative.   [2] Inquit.

b. The relations of **hīc**, **is**, and **ille** will be understood from the following illustration : —

<div style="text-align:center">

The place of the speaker. **hīc**   **is**   **is**   **is**   **ille**

</div>

c. As a pronoun **is** means *he, she, it*. It is frequently used as the antecedent of **quī**, *who;* **is quī**, *he who;* **eī quī**, *they who*.

120. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Is servus cum cūrā labōrat,** *that slave toils with care*.

2. **Patientiam ēius servī laudāmus,** *the patience of that slave we praise*.

3. **Patientia ēius laudātur,** *his (of him) patience is praised*.

4. **Is quī patientiam habet laudātur,** *he who has patience is praised*.

a. Observe the translation of **ēius** in 3. So **eōrum**, **eārum** must often be translated *their*.

121. *Vocabulary.*

benīgnus, -a, -um, *kind*.	**fīdus, -a, -um,** *faithful*.
contentus, -a, -um, *contented*.	**fortiter,** adv. *bravely*.
dā (imperative), *give*.	**malus, -a, -um,** *bad*.
dedit, *gave, has given*.	**territus, -a, -um,** *frightened*.

---

122. 1. Eōs virōs amāmus, sed eōrum fīliī sunt malī. 2. Eae fēminae amantur, sed nōn eārum fīliae. 3. Nōn bonum fuit cōnsilium eōrum virōrum. 4. Is quī est contentus et benīgnus amīcīs[1] placet. 5. Eum amīcī amant laudantque. 6. Māximē grātum servō fīdō est aurum quod eī dedit dominus. 7. Grāta equō est aqua quam

[1] Observe the dative.

portat agricola benīgnus.   8. Eī perītī nautae māgnō
ventō territī sunt.   9. Quibus est illa praeda quae in
forum reportātur?   10. Praeda est eīs quī in pūgnīs
fortiter pūgnābant.

123.   1. Where do the sons of that man live?
2. "They live in a large town," said[1] Marcus, "and
are lazy fellows."[2]   3. "They do not please the mas-
ter[3]; for books do not delight them."   4. "Those books
which a friend has given them[4] do not afford[5] them[4]
joy."   5. But, good friend, give them good advice.
6. Then they will toil industriously, and will not be
sad.   7. Those who labor are often merry.   8. Those
boys are not lazy fellows[2]; they are tired.

[1] Inquit.

[2] Omit.   Adjectives are often
used in the plural in Latin, as in
English, without a noun: **bonī**,
the good, **multa**, *many things*.

[3] Use **magister.**

[4] See sixth sentence above.

[5] *do . . . afford = give.*

EQUES.

LESSON XVIII.

Third Declension.

124. The stem ends in a consonant or in *i*.

125. Consonant stems are named, according to their final letter, *mute stems* and *liquid stems*.

MUTE STEMS.

126. *Paradigms.*

	prīnceps, m. *chief.*	rēx, m. *king.*	mīles, m. *soldier.*	caput, n. *head.*
STEM,	prīncip-	rēg-	mīlit-	capit-

SINGULAR.

N.	prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
G.	prīncipis	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis
D.	prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
Ac.	prīncipem	rēgem	mīlitem	caput
AB.	prīncipe	rēge	mīlite	capite

PLURAL.

N.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
G.	prīncipum	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum
D.	prīnci'pibus	rēgibus	mīli'tibus	capi'tibus
Ac.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
AB.	prīnci'pibus	rēgibus	mīli'tibus	capi'tibus

a. Notice that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in forming the nominative. No rule can be given.

b. The stem can generally be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular, which is always given.

c. Notice that, except in neuters, the endings are the same in all the paradigms (rēx = rēgs). Neuters have the accusative like the nominative.

d. To decline a noun with a mute stem, add to the stem the endings, as in the paradigms given above.

e. Decline together is **prīnceps, mīles fīdus, id caput.**

127.   *Vocabulary.*

caput, capitis, n. *head.*

dux, ducis, m. *leader, general.*

eques, equitis, m. *horseman.*

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, take by storm, take, capture.

habuit, *had, has had, held, kept.*

mīles, mīlitis, m. *soldier*, p. 133.

oppidānus, -ī, m. *townsman.*

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *besiege, attack.*

pedes, peditis, m. *foot-soldier.*

prīnceps, prīncipis, m. *chief, leader.*

rēx, rēgis, m. *king.*

tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *try, attempt.*

Titus, -ī, m. *Titus.*

---

128. 1. Ōlim Titus, quī prīnceps erat perītus, oppidum oppūgnābat. 2. Fīdōs mīlitēs, et[1] equitēs et peditēs, habuit. 3. In eō oppidō fuit Sextus rēx cum oppidānīs, — virīs, fēminīs, līberīsque. 4. Diū oppidum, in quō fuit Sextus, expūgnāre tentābat ille dux cum mīlitibus. 5. Nam in eō fuit māgna praeda, et[1] arma et aurum. 6. Prō quibus pūgnābant oppidānī? 7. Fortiter pūgnābant illī oppidānī prō līberīs fēminīsque. 8. Caput ducis mīlitum sagittā vulnerātum est. 9. Tum territī erant peditēs equitēsque. 10. Nunc oppidānī eōs fugant et cum studiō agitant. 11. Este contentī, oppidānī, nam deī[2] fuērunt benīgnī.

[1] Et . . . et = *both . . . and.*   [2] See **499.**

129. 1. There was once a town that[1] had a great amount[2] of booty. 2. This booty[3] a leader tried to gain for his[4] soldiers. 3. With horsemen and foot-soldiers he attacked the town. 4. But he was wounded by the king, Sextus. 5. His black horse, which he was especially fond[5] of, was wounded. 6. For a long time he kept his sword and fought bravely. 7. But his frightened soldiers were put to flight by the townsmen.

———

LESSON XIX.

Third Declension.

MUTE STEMS. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

130. *Paradigms.*

	pēs, m. *foot.*	lapis, m. *stone.*	virtūs, f. *manliness.*
STEM,	ped-	lapid-	virtūt-

SINGULAR.

N.	pēs	lapis	virtūs
G.	pedis	lapidis	virtūtis
D.	pedī	lapidī	virtūtī
Ac.	pedem	lapidem	virtūtem
Ab.	pede	lapide	virtūte

[1] Nominative.
[2] Express *a great amount of* by one word.
[3] The object.
[4] Omit here and in the following sentences.
[5] See p. 20, n. 1.

PLURAL.

N.	pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
G.	pedum	lapidum	virtūtum
D.	pedibus	lapi'dibus	virtūtibus
Ac.	pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
Ab.	pedibus	lapi'dibus	virtūtibus

a. Notice that the final letter of the stem is dropped in forming the nominative.

b. Notice that the endings are the same as those of the last preceding paradigms.

c. Decline together **pēs malus, ille lapis, haec virtūs.**

131.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Puer patientiā laudātur,** *the boy is praised on account of (because of) his patience.*

2. **Mīles ā duce audāciā laudābitur,** *the soldier will be praised by the leader for his daring.*

3. **Equī frūmentī inopiā labōrant,** *the horses suffer from want of grain.*

4. **Pedes longā viā est dēfessus,** *the foot-soldier is tired with the long march.*

a. Observe that **patientiā, audāciā, inopiā,** and **viā** denote the cause. Notice the various translations of these ablatives : *on account of, because of, for, from, with.*

132. Rule. — *The ablative is used to express cause.*

133. We have now seen that, —

1. The ablative of *agent* answers the question *by whom ?*

2. The ablative of *means* or *instrument* answers the question *by what ?*

3. The ablative of *manner* answers the question *how ?*

4. The ablative of *cause* answers the question *why ?*

134. *Vocabulary.*

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, m. *youth* (152, *a*).

celeritās, celeritātis, f. *swiftness, speed.*

cōnstantia, -ae, f. *firmness.*

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus *blame, find fault with.*

fortūna, -ae, f. *fortune, good fuga, -ae,** f. *flight.* [*fortune.*

inopia, -ae, f. *want, lack.*

lapis, lapidis, m. *stone.*

pēs, pedis, m. *foot.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hasten.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save.

vīgintī (indecl.) *twenty.*

virtūs, virtūtis, f. *courage, virtue, bravery.*

vīta, -ae, f. *life.*

---

135. 1. Illī mīlitēs ab hōc prīncipe fugā culpābantur. 2. Quis eōs virtūte culpābit? 3. Quōs celeritāte dux laudābat? 4. Equitēs laudābat, quōrum equī nunc frūmentī inopiā labōrant. 5. Pedēs hōrum peditum lapidibus vulnerātī erant. 6. Māgnā celeritāte in illud oppidum properābant amīcī et inimīcī. 7. Eī amīcī Mārcī bonā fortūnā sunt contentī. 8. Dux cōnstantiā dēlectābātur mīlitum quī fortiter pūgnāverant. 9. Oppidānī lapidibus vulnerātī sunt. 10. Vīgintī adulēscentēs vītam prīncipis servāvērunt. 11. Oppidum expūgnāre tentābat, sed caput sagittā vulnerātum est.

a. Point out four different uses of the ablative above, and tell how you can distinguish them.

136. 1. The king was delighted with the courage of those foot-soldiers. 2. But they were tired out with the march,[1] which had been a long one.[2] 3. And had

---

[1] See p. 20, n. 1.   [2] Omit.

suffered from lack of food. 4. The feet of the poor horses had been wounded by the stones on the road. 5. Who will bring for them[1] some[2] water and grain? 6. Bring food, boys, for the men, and water for the tired horses. 7. The food and the water were speedily[3] brought by the good boys.

137. *Colloquium.*

FRĀTER ET SORŌRCULA.
brother   little sister

F. Fābulam bonam amīcus mihi hodiē nārrāvit.
to me

S. Dē quō tibi nārrāvit amīcus?
about   to you

F. Dē Īcarō, Daedalī fīliō, quī in Crētā habitābat.

S. Mihi quoque dē Īcarō Latīnē nārrā. Fuitne Īcarus
also   in Latin
puer malus?

F. Minimē malus sed miserrimus. Habēbat ālās
by no means   most unfortunate   wings
quās cērā aptāverat Daedalus; Īcarus ēvolāvit sed cēra
with wax had fitted   flew away
sōle liquefacta est. Tum . . .
by the sun was melted   then

S. Tum . . . quid?

F. Mihi nōn sunt verba Latīna; itaque haesitō.
words   and so I hesitate

S. Ergō nārrā Anglicē. Nam linguam Anglicam
well, then   language
intellegō.
I understand.

F. Minimē. Latīnē tibi nārrābō, nōn Anglicē.

[1] eīs.   [2] Omit.   either of the three ways illus-
[3] This may be expressed in   trated in 92.

LESSON XX.

Third Declension.

LIQUID STEMS.

DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE.

138.   *Paradigms.*

	cōnsul, m. *consul.*	pater, m. *father.*	victor, m. *victor.*	homō, m. *man.*
STEM,	cōnsul-	patr-	victor-	homin-

SINGULAR.

	cōnsul	pater	victor	homō
N.	cōnsul	pater	victor	homō
G.	cōnsulis	patris	victōris	hominis
D.	cōnsulī	patrī	victōrī	hominī
Ac.	cōnsulem	patrem	victōrem	hominem
AB.	cōnsule	patre	victōre	homine

PLURAL.

	cōnsulēs	patrēs	victōrēs	hominēs
N.	cōnsulēs	patrēs	victōrēs	hominēs
G.	cōnsulum	patrum	victōrum	hominum
D.	cōn'su'libus	patribus	victōribus	homi'nibus
Ac.	cōnsulēs	patrēs	victōrēs	hominēs
AB.	cōnsu'libus	patribus	victōribus	homi'nibus

	vulnus, n. *wound.*		corpus, n. *body.*	
STEM,	vulner-		corpor-	

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
G.	vulneris	vulnerum	corporis	corporum
D.	vulnerī	vulne'ribus	corporī	corpo'ribus
Ac.	vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
AB.	vulnere	vulne'ribus	corpore	corpo'ribus

a. Observe that the endings in the preceding paradigms are the same as in the paradigms of mute stems.

139.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Galba agricola fuit māgnā dīligentiā.**

2. **Galba agricola fuit māgnae dīligentiae.**

Galba was a farmer of great industry.

3. **Cornēlia fuit parvīs pedibus.**

4. **Cornēlia fuit parvōrum pedum.**

Cornelia was (a woman) with small feet.

a. Observe that in each sentence the ablative or genitive is used *with an adjective* for the purpose of description. These sentences, then, illustrate the *descriptive ablative* and the *descriptive genitive*.

140. Rule. — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing.*

a. You cannot say in Latin, as we do in English, *a man of courage*, *of honor*, *of property*. An adjective or its equivalent must be used : *a man of great courage*, etc.

141.   *Vocabulary.*

ad, prep. with acc., *near, towards, to.*

annus, -ī, m. *year.*

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m. *consul.*

flūmen, flūminis, n. *river.*

Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal.*

Hispānia, -ae, f. *Spain.*

homō, hominis, m. *man.*

pater, patris, m. *father.*

Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis, m. *Scipio.*

septendecim, *seventeen.*

summus, -a, -um, *highest, greatest.*

tener, -era, -erum, *tender.*

Ticinus, -ī, m. *the Ticinus.*

victor, victōris, m. *victor.*

homō, *man,* as distinguished from the lower animals.

vir (57), *man,* as distinguished from woman ; *hero.*

142. 1. Hannibal et Scīpiō ōlim erant clārī ducēs.
2. Ille erat Poenus, quī diū Rōmānōs superāre tentābat.
3. Hīc erat Rōmānus, cūius virtūs patriam servāvit.
4. Fuērunt summae virtūtis. 5. Puerī[1] annīs tenerīs
fuērunt in pūgnīs, hīc in Ītaliā, ille in Hispāniā.
6. Scīpiō patrem in pūgnā ad Tīcīnum flūmen servāvit.
7. Tum fuit adulēscēns septendecim annōrum. 8. Hanni-
bal, adulēscēns[2] nōn vīgintī annīs, oppida in Hispāniā
oppūgnāvit.

143. 1. The consul's soldiers fought in Italy and
Africa. 2. The consul had a son Scipio of tender years,
who fought in a battle with the Carthaginians. 3. In
that battle the soldiers of the Romans were not the
victors. 4. They were put to flight by Hannibal's horse-
men. 5. But they were men of the greatest courage.

———∞———

LESSON XXI.

144.   Reading Lesson.

SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL.

In this lesson and some of the following, less important
words that need not be committed to memory are given only
in the general vocabulary.

Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō Āfricānus Māior,[3] adulēscēns
septendecim annōrum, ad Tīcīnum flūmen vītam patris
servāvit. In pūgnā Cannēnsī[4] fortiter pūgnāvit. Posteā
Carthāginem Novam, oppidum in Hispāniā expūgnāvit.

[1] *When boys.*   [2] *When a youth.*   [3] *The Elder.*   [4] *Of Cannae.*

Obsidibus Hispānōrum benignus erat et eīs lībertātem dedit. Nōn minus fēlīciter in Āfricā bellāvit ibique Poenōs superāvit. Ad Zamam Scīpiō et Hannibal castra habuērunt.[1] Clārum est illud colloquium quod ante pūgnam habuērunt. Poenī ā Scīpiōne superātī et fugātī sunt. Scīpiō triumphum māgnificum ex Āfricā reportāvit et ā populō Āfricānus est appellātus.

145. 1. Who saved his father by his bravery near the river Ticinus? 2. Scipio, who was then a youth of seventeen years. 3. Whom did he afterwards defeat? 4. He defeated Hannibal, that famous Carthaginian. 5. The victory which Scipio won was famous. 6. Famous was the triumph that Scipio had.[2] 7. And the people called him Africanus.

146.   *Vocabulary.*

castra, -ōrum, n. (pl.) *camp.*
colloquium, -ī, n. *conversation, colloquy.*
fēlīciter, adv. *luckily, successfully.*

lībertās, lībertātis, f. *liberty, freedom.*
obses, obsidis, m. *hostage.*
populus, -ī, m. *people.*

147.   *Colloquium.*

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Quis fuit Hannibal? Fuit Rōmānus an Poenus?
                              or
D. Fuit Poenus et ā Scīpiōne victus est.

P. Ubi fuit Hannibalis patria?

D. Carthāgō, Hannibalis patria, fuit in Āfricā.

P. Cūr *fuit?* cūr nōn *est* in Āfricā?
    why

[1] *Had.*   [2] *Habuit.*

D. Quia Carthāgō iam dūdum dēlēta est.
because   long ago was destroyed.

P. Quot nōmina erant Scīpiōnī?
how many names

D. Tria Scīpiōnī erant nōmina : Pūblius Cornēlius
three

Scīpiō.

P. Rēctē, mī puer, praenōmen *Pūblius ; Cornēlius*
correct   first name

nōmen gentīle ; *Scīpiō* cōgnōmen.
family   cognomen

D. Nōnne interdum appellātus est Scīpiō *Āfricānus ?*
sometimes

P. Certissimē. Hōc autem nōmen dīcēbant Rōmānī
          moreover   called

cōgnōmen secundum.
second

SCIPIO.   HANNIBAL.

LESSON XXII.

Third Declension. — *Continued.*

Stems in Ĭ.

148. *Paradigms.*

ĭgnĭs, m. *fire.*	hostĭs, m. *enemy.*	nūbēs, f. *cloud.*	mare, n. *sea.*
Stem. ĭgnĭ-	hostĭ-	nūbĭ-	marĭ-

SINGULAR.

N.	ĭgnĭs	hostĭs	nūbēs	mare
G.	ĭgnĭs	hostĭs	nūbĭs	marĭs
D.	ĭgnĭ	hostĭ	nūbĭ	marī
Ac.	ĭgnem	hostem	nūbem	mare
Ab.	ĭgnĭ, e	hoste	nūbe	marī

PLURAL.

N.	ĭgnēs	hostēs	nūbēs	marĭa
G.	ĭgnĭum	hostĭum	nūbĭum	———
D.	ĭgnĭbus	hostĭbus	nūbĭbus	marĭbus
Ac.	ĭgnĭs, -ēs	hostĭs, -ēs	nūbĭs, -ēs	marĭa
Ab.	ĭgnĭbus	hostĭbus	nūbĭbus	marĭbus

animal, n. *animal.*		calcar, n. *spur.*	
Stem. animālĭ-		calcārĭ-	
Sing.	Plu.	Sing.	Plu.
N. animal	animālĭa	calcar	calcārĭa
G. animālĭs	animālĭum	calcārĭs	calcārĭum
D. animālĭ	animālĭbus	calcārī	calcārĭbus
Ac. animal	animālĭa	calcar	calcārĭa
Ab. animālĭ	animālĭbus	calcārī	calcārĭbus

a. Compare the declension endings of hostĭs and nūbēs with those of mute stems (**126, 130, 138**). In the singular, except in the nominative, which is variable, the endings are the same. What are the differences in the plural?

b. Nouns in **-ēs** (gen. **-is**) are declined like **nūbēs**.

c. How does the declension of **ignis** differ from that of **hostis**? The most common nouns declined like **ignis** are **avis**, *bird*, **cīvis**, *citizen*, **fīnis**, *end*.

d. A few nouns in **-is** have both **-im** and **-em** in the accusative singular. These will be noted as they occur.

e. As a guide to the learner, all words having i-stems will be followed by the stem in the succeeding vocabularies.

149. *Vocabulary.*

animal, -ālis, n. (animāli-), *animal.*

animus, -ī, m. *mind, soul.*

calcar, -āris, n. (calcāri-), *spur,* p. 186.

cīvis, -is, m. and f. (cīvi-), *citizen.*

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rouse up, spur.*

ex (ē), prep. with abl., *out of, from.*

fīnis, -is, m. (fīni-), *end, border,* pl. *territories.*

hostis, -is, m. (hosti-), *enemy.*

ignis, -is, m. (igni-), *fire.*

mare, -is, n. (mari-), *sea.*

nāvis, -is, f. (nāvi-), [acc. **-em** or **-im,** abl. **-ī** or **e**], *ship,* pp. 79, 88.

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *kill.*

nūbēs, -is, f. (nūbi-), *cloud.*

hostis, general word for *enemy; a public enemy.*

inimīcus, *a private* or *personal enemy;* opposed to **amīcus.**

---

150. 1. Cīvēs nūbem equitum in fīne terrae vident. 2. Quid habent eī equitēs in animō? 3.[1] Quid eīs est in animō? 4. Equōs calcāribus concitant et oppidum expūgnābunt. 5. In hōc oppidō multī erant hominēs quī rēgem inopiā armōrum culpābant. 6. Cīvēs māximē territī sunt (*were terrified*) et ad mare summā celeritāte properāvērunt. 7. Multa animālia ab hostibus

[1] *What do they intend,* or *mean?*

lapidibus necāta sunt. 8. Necātī sunt in fugā vīgintī
cīvēs. 9. Iī quōrum vīta servāta est nunc vident in
oppidō māgnum īgnem.

151. 1. A citizen sees a great ship on the sea.
2. In the ship that he sees there are many enemies.
3. Their [1] chief is a man of great stature. [2] 4. [8] What have
those soldiers in mind? 5. They are hastening from the
ship upon [4] the land. 6. They have horses and spurs.
7. They will try to take this town with fire and sword.
8. Will not the firmness of the citizens save the town?

———◦⋈◦———

LESSON XXIII.

Third Declension.

STEMS IN Ĭ. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF TIME.

152.   *Paradigms.*

	cliēns, m.	urbs, f.	arx, f.	nox, f.
	dependent.	*city.*	*citadel.*	*night.*
STEM.	clienti-	urbi-	arci-	nocti-

SINGULAR.

	cliēns	urbs	arx	nox
N.	cliēns	urbs	arx	nox
G.	clientis	urbis	arcis	noctis
D.	clientī	urbī	arcī	noctī
Ac.	clientem	urbem	arcem	noctem
Ab.	cliente	urbe	arce	nocte

[1] Eōrum.   [2] Use corpus.   [8] See 150, 2 and 3.   [4] In with acc.

PLURAL.

N.	clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	noctēs
G.	clientium	urbium	arcium	noctium
D.	clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus
Ac.	clientīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	arcīs, -ēs	noctīs, -ēs
Ab.	clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus

a. Most nouns in -ns and -rs are declined like those above. Parēns, *parent*, has the genitive plural parentum.

b. Besides nox, three common monosyllables in -s or -x *following a vowel*, mūs (gen. mūris), *mouse*, nix (gen. nivis), *snow*, and os (gen. ossis), *bone*, have -ium in the genitive plural.

153. A review of the paradigms of nouns with i-stems indicates that to i-stems belong

1. Nouns in -is and -ēs not increasing in the genitive.[1]
2. Neuters in -e, -al, -ar.
3. Nouns in -ns. So also those in -rs.
4. Monosyllables in -s or -x following a consonant.

a. Decline together nigra nūbēs, animal māgnum, urbs pulchra, illa arx, hōc mare.

154. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Hieme et aestāte hominēs labōrant,** *men toil in winter and summer*.

2. **Prīmā lūce multōs hostēs vident,** *at daybreak (first light) they see many enemies*.

3. **Hīs vīgintī annīs aedificātae sunt multae urbēs,** *within these twenty years many cities have been built*.

a. Observe that the ablatives in the above sentences are expressions of time. They answer the questions, *When? in,* or *within what time?*

[1] That is, having no more syllables than in the nominative.

155. Rule. — *Time* **when** *or* **within which** *is* expressed by the ablative.

156.   *Vocabulary.*

aestās, aestātis, f. *summer.*
arx, arcis, f. (arci-), *citadel, fortress.*
avis, -is, f. (avi-) *bird.*
ēheu, interj. *alas!*
hiems, hiemis, f. *winter.*
hōra, -ae, f. *hour.*
lūx, lūcis, f. *light.*

nox, noctis, f. (nocti-), *night.*
prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*
recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refresh.*
secundus, -a, -um, *second.*
tempus, -oris, n. *time.*
urbs, urbis, f. (urbi-), *city.*
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus,[1] *fly.*

157. 1. Hieme ventus mare et nūbēs agitat. 2. Aestāte somnus est grātus hominibus dēfessīs. 3. In marī nūbem avium prīmā lūce vident puerī. 4. Hōrā secundā vident animālia māgnō corpore. 5. Hominēs territī equōs concitant calcāribus. 6. Prīmā nocte[2] avēs ex marī in terram volant. 7. Cōnsul fīlium virtūte laudāvit. 8. In urbe est īgnis quem hostēs vident ex fīne terrae. 9. Hostēs oppūgnābunt arcem quam in fīne urbis vident. 10. Quō tempore arx oppūgnāta est? 11. Prīmā hōrā vīgintī, secundā septendecim hominēs ā victōribus sunt necātī.

158. 1. Where had those arms been with which the citizens fought? 2. They had been in the highest citadel. 3. Who is that leader whom the citizens see? 4. At the second hour of the night there will be a big moon. 5. Then by the light of the moon they will attack this city boldly.[3] 6. They mean[4] to take the city

---

[1] See p. 96, n. 1.   [2] See 3 above.   [3] See **93**.   [4] See 150, 3.

and the citadel. 7. Alas! will the tender women and children be slain by the enemy? 8. On that night the bodies of the weary citizens were not refreshed by sleep.

————•◦•————

LESSON XXIV.

Third Declension. — *Continued.*

159. GENDER.

1. Nouns in -ŏ, -or, -ŏs, -er, and -es increasing in the genitive (commonly -itis, -idis), are masculine.

2. But nouns in -dŏ, -gŏ, together with abstract and collective nouns in -iŏ, are feminine.

3. Nouns in -ās, -ēs not increasing in the genitive, -is, -ūs, -s following a consonant, and -x, are feminine.

4. Nouns in -a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -ŭs, are neuter.

a. The above rules are subordinate to the general rules of gender (**13**).

b. Distinguish carefully nouns ending in ūs and ŭs.

c. The rules will assist in remembering the gender of nouns, but there are many exceptions which the learner should carefully note as they occur.

160. *Table for Review of Nouns of Third Declension.*

MASCULINE.

*dux, ducis, m. *leader.*
eques, -itis, m. *horseman.*
miles, -itis, m. *soldier.*
pedes, -itis, m. *foot-soldier.*
*princeps, -ipis, m. *chief.*
*rēx, rēgis, m. *king.*
*lapis, -idis, m. *stone.*
pēs, pedis, m. *foot.*
*adulēscēns, -entis, m. (adulē-
　scenti-), *youth.*
*cōnsul, -ulis, m. *consul.*
*Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal.*
obses, -idis, m. *hostage.*
pater, patris, m. *father.*
Scīpiō, -ōnis, m. *Scipio.*
victor, -ōris, m. *victor.*
homō, -inis, m. *man.*
*cīvis, -is, m. (cīvi-), *citizen.*
*fīnis, -is, m. (fīni-), *end.*
*hostis, -is, m. (hosti-), *enemy.*
*īgnis, -is, m. (īgni-), *fire.*
*cliēns, -entis, m. (clienti-),
　dependent.

FEMININE.

celeritās, -ātis, f. *quickness.*
virtūs, -ūtis, f. *virtue, courage.*
aetās, -ātis, f. *age.*
avis, -is, f. (avi-), *bird.*
nāvis, -is, f. (nāvi-), *ship.*
nūbēs, -is, f. (nūbi-), *cloud.*
aestās, -ātis, f. *summer.*
arx, arcis, f. (arci-), *citadel.*
lūx, lūcis, f. *light.*
nox, noctis, f. (nocti-), *night.*
urbs, urbis, f. (urbi-), *city.*
lībertās, -ātis, f. *liberty.*

NEUTER.

caput, -itis, n. *head.*
flūmen, -inis, n. *river.*
vulnus, -eris, n. *wound.*
corpus, -oris, n. *body.*
animal, -ālis, n. (animāli-),
　animal.
calcar, -āris, n. (calcāri-),
　spur.
mare, -is, n. (mari-), *sea.*
tempus, -oris, n. *time.*

a. Exceptions to the rules of gender (**159**) are starred. See how many of these are covered by the general rules for gender (**13**).

b. Prove the gender of nouns not starred by applying the proper rule to each.

c. Make a list of all the above nouns having mute stems, and another of i-stems.

161. *Anecdote.*

CICERO.

Cicerō, vir facētus,[1] ioca[2] amābat. Ōlim Lentulum generum,[3] quī parvae statūrae[4] erat, cum gladiō longō videt. "Quis," inquit[5] Cicerō, "generum meum ad illum gladium adligāvit?"[6]

162. *Colloquium.*

FRĀTER ET SORŪRCULA.
brother   little sister.

S. Nārrā mihi, frāter, dē Polyphēmō; quis fuit et ubi habitābat?

F. Polyphēmus fīlius Neptūnī fuit et cum frātribus in insulā habitābat.

S. Fuitne arātor et agrōs arābat?
ploughman

F. Minimē. Neque fuit arātor neque agrōs arābat Polyphēmus.
neither   nor

S. Nauta igitur sine dubiō fuit, et maria nāvibus nāvigābat.

F. Errāvistī, mea sorōrcula, Polyphēmus fuit pāstor et
You are mistaken   shepherd
māgnās ovium gregēs habēbat. Fuit ingentis corporis
of sheep   flocks   huge
et ūnum tantum oculum habuit. Ulixēs dolōsus eī ūnum
one   only   eye   Ulysses   crafty   his one
oculum stīpite perforāvit.
stake   bored out

S. Ēheu! miserrimum Polyphēmum!
Oh dear!   poor

---

[1] *Witty.* [2] *Jokes.* [3] *Son-in-law.*
[4] *Stature.* [5] *Said.* [6] *Tied.*

LESSON XXV.

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

163. *Paradigms.*

audāx, *bold.* STEM audāci-

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
N.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
G.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
D.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Ac.	audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
Ab.	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	audācibus	audācibus

prūdēns, *prudent.* STEM prūdenti-

N.	prūdēns	prūdēns	prūdentēs	prūdentia
G.	prūdentis	prūdentis	prūdentium	prūdentium
D.	prūdentī	prūdentī	prūdentibus	prūdentibus
Ac.	prūdentem	prūdēns	prūdentīs, -ēs	prūdentia
Ab.	prūdentī, -e	prūdentī, -e	prūdentibus	prūdentibus

brevis, *short.* STEM brevi-

N.	brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia
G.	brevis	brevis	brevium	brevium
D.	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus
Ac.	brevem	breve	brevīs, -ēs	brevia
Ab.	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus

ācer, *keen, eager, active.* STEM ācri-

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. Adjectives declined like **audāx** and **prūdēns**, having one form in the nominative singular for all genders, are called *adjectives of one termination;* those declined like **brevis**, *adjectives of two terminations ;* those declined like **ācer**, *adjectives of three terminations.*

b. Like what noun in the paradigms of i-stems are **audāx** and **prūdēns** declined in the masculine and feminine? How does the neuter differ in declension from **mare** ?

c. Observe that adjectives of two terminations (like **brevis**), and also those of three terminations (like **ācer**), have only -ī in the ablative singular.

Note. — Adjectives of one termination have the genitive indicated in the vocabularies. The nominatives only of the others are given.

164. *Vocabulary.*

ā or ab, prep. with abl.,*from, by*.
audāx, -ācis, *bold, daring.*
brevis, -e, *short, brief.*
comes, -itis, m. *comrade.*
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, summon.*
cūr, adv. *why ?*
frāter, frātris, m. *brother.*
gravis, -e, *heavy, severe.*

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid.*
mox, adv. *presently.*
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, take.*
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get ready, prepare for.*
prūdēns, -entis, *wise, prudent.*
vulnus, -eris, n. *wound.*

---

165. 1. Brevī tempore prīncipēs audācēs populum convocābunt.   2. Laudāmus prūdentem populum quī bellum parat.   3. Mīlitēs ācrēs castra māgnā cum cūrā parāvērunt.   4. Dā, Ō Hannibal, obsidibus lībertātem.   5. Frāter ducis gravī vulnere [1] ad castra portātus est.

[1] Ablative of cause.

6. Nūntius ā līberō populō celeritāte laudātur.   7. Illa castra hostium prīmā lūce occupābimus.   8. Tum cīvēs virtūte iuvābimus.   9. Quis amīcōs iuvāre nōn tentābit ?

166. 1. The war will be short, for the leader is wise. 2. He will try to seize the camp of the enemy.   3. Why will the camp be seized by the prudent commander ? 4. He will aid the hostages, who are now in the camp. 5. His brother will help him in this war.   6. His comrade is now getting ready arms — shields, spears, arrows. 7. Presently the eager soldiers will be called together.

LESSON XXVI.

Ablative of Specification.

167.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Rōmānī Gallōs virtūte superābant**, *the Romans surpassed the Gauls in bravery.*

2. **Puer comitī dīligentiā est similis**, *the boy is like his comrade in industry.*

3. **Bibulus nōmine tantum cōnsul fuit**, *Bibulus was consul only in name.*

a. **Virtūte** limits **superābant** in meaning.   In the same way **dīligentiā** and **nōmine** limit **similis** and **cōnsul**.   These ablatives answer the question *in what respect ?*   The ablative thus used is called the ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

168. Rule. — *The ablative is used with verbs, adjectives, and nouns, to denote* **in what respect** *a thing is true.*

169.   *Vocabulary.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, *keen, shrewd.*

fortis, -e, *brave, strong.*

ingēns, -entis, *huge, great.*

nōmen, -inis, n. *name.*

numerus, -ī, m. *number.*

omnis, -e, *all, whole.*

pār, paris, *equal (to).*

scientia, -ae, f. *knowledge, skill.*

similis, -e, *like, similar.* Often with dative.

terror, -ōris, m. *alarm, terror.*

170. 1. Ille pedes comitem celeritāte pedum superāvit. 2. Is mīles ab hōc oppidānō audāciā superātus est. 3. Cōnsul est rēgī pār bellī scientiā. 4. Brevī tempore in urbe terror fuit ingēns. 5. Nam hostēs audācēs numerō cīvēs superāvērunt. 6. Omnēs ducēs, hominēs fortēs prūdentēsque, multa vulnera habent. 7. Quis igitur eōs inopiā virtūtis nunc culpābit? 8. Nunc somnus grātus est eī fortī mīlitī, quī animō et corpore est dēfessus. 9. Laudāte prīncipem ācrī animō[1] et corpore[1] validō.

171. 1. Hannibal, leader of the Carthaginians, surpassed the Romans in skill in war.[2] 2. He was a man of shrewd mind. 3. In courage he was like his father. 4. Who was his[3] equal in daring? 5. In a short time his name was a terror to the enemy on account of his many victories. 6. But in good fortune he was not equal to Scipio. 7. In what great battle was he defeated by that Roman?

[1] See **140.**   [2] Genitive.   [3] EI.
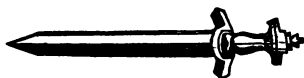
GLADIUS.

LESSON XXVII.

Second Conjugation. — Ē-Verbs.

Moneō (stem **monē**), *advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.**

172. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō** (512).

a. Compare the forms of **moneō** with those of **amō.** To inflect **moneō,** you have only to remember that the stem vowel is *ē* instead of *ā*.

---

173. 1. Monet, monēbat, monēbit. 2. Monētur, monē-bātur, monēbitur. 3. Monent, monēbant, monēbunt. 4. Monentur, monēbantur, monēbuntur. 5. Moneō, monēbam, monēbō. 6. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 7. Monēmus, monēmur. 8. Monēbāmus, monēbāmur. 9. Monēbimus, monēbimur. 10. Monē, monēre. 11. Monēte, monēminī. 12. Monēre, monērī.

a. Like **moneō** inflect in both voices the following : **habeō,** *have, hold;* **videō,** *see;* **terreō,** *frighten;* **moveō,** *move.*

174. 1. He sees, he is seen. 2. He was seeing, he was seen. 3. He will see, he will be seen. 4. They are seeing, they are seen. 5. To have, to see, to frighten. 6. To be had, to be seen, to be frightened. 7. We shall see, we shall be seen. 8. You were seeing, you were seen. 9. Does he hold ? Is he seen ? Is he frightened ? 10. See (thou), see (ye). 11. Be thou seen, be ye seen.

175.   *Vocabulary.*

antīquus, -a, -um, *old, of old, ancient.*   [*increase.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus,

habeō, -ēre, -uī, habitus, *hold, have, keep.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *wait, remain, stay.*

mora, -ae, f. *delay.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*

quoque, conj. *too, also.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *frighten.*

vetus, veteris, *old.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see.*

antīquus, *ancient, old,* as opposed to *modern, new.*

vetus, *old,* as opposed to *recent, young.*

---

176. 1. Incolae terrēbantur et omnia quae habēbant ex urbe movēbant. 2. Secundā noctis hōrā ingēns īgnis omnibus ā cīvibus vidēbātur. 3. Ubi fuit is īgnis quem cīvēs vidēbant? 4. Īgnis fuit in illā arce vetere quam hominēs antīquī aedificāverant. 5. Īgnem ventus māgnus auget ; augētur igitur cīvium illōrum terror. 6. Quī aquam portābunt? 7. Cūr manētis? 8. Nōnne sunt in illā arce vīgintī hominēs? 9. Sine morā aqua ab oppidānīs et servīs fidīs portābātur. 10. Fēlīciter brevī tempore iī virī fortēs in arce servātī sunt. 11. Omnēs cīvēs gaudent (*rejoice*) et nōs (*we*) quoque gaudēmus.
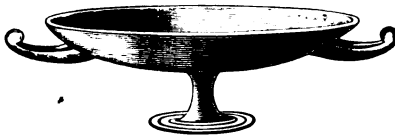
POCULUM.

LESSON XXVIII.

177.   R e a d i n g   L e s s o n.[1]

THE VOLSCIANS.

Ōlim Volscī, Rōmānōrum hostēs audācēs, urbī Rōmae[2] ingentem terrōrem praebēbant.   Terror subitus erat, **nam** hostēs prope erant.   Tum cōnsul sine morā iuventūtem armat, complet cibō urbem, omnia[3] tūta et tranquilla praebet.   Interim hostēs aedificia multa in agrīs dēlent.   Ita terrōrem augent rūsticōrum quōs cīvēs frūstrā iuvāre tentant.   Hostēs rīdēbant et gaudēbant, sed rūsticī lūgēbant.

178. 1. Who are causing great terror to this city ? 2. The enemy are close at hand, consul ; arm the youth without delay.   3. The youth were armed speedily by the consul.   4. He will fill the city with food, he will render all things in the city safe.   5. In the meantime the enemy were destroying many buildings in the fields.   6. The alarm of the country people is increased.   7. For the enemy are increasing in number.

179.   *Vocabulary.*

aedificium, -ī, n. *building.*

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill, fill up, cover.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy.*

frūstrā, adv. *in vain.*

interim, adv. *in the meantime.*

iuventūs, -ūtis, f. *youth.*

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī,——, *mourn.*

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *furnish, render, cause.*

prope, adv. *near.*

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh.*

rūsticus, -ī, m. *peasant.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

[1] See introductory note to **144.**   [2] Appositive.   [3] *All things.*

LESSON XXIX.

The Locative Case.

180. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Caesar Rōmae mānsit,** *Caesar remained at Rome.*

2. **Athēnīs erat templum pulchrum,** *at Athens there was a fine temple.*

3. **Cōnsul rūrī habitābat,** *the consul was living in the country.*

a. Names of towns and a few other words have a form called the Locative, which expresses the idea of *at, in, on.*

b. The Locative has the following endings :

	SING.	PLU.
First declension	-ae	-īs
Second declension	-ī	-īs
Third declension	-ī(-e)	-ibus

181. *Vocabulary.*

Athēna, -ae, f. *Athena (a goddess).*

Athēnae, -ārum, f. (pl.) *Athens.*

Capua, -ae, f. *Capua.*

Carthāgō, -inis, f. *Carthage.*

Corinthus, -ī, f. *Corinth.*

Delphī, -ōrum, m. (pl.) *Delphi.*

iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, ——, *lie.*

Trallēs, -ium, f. (pl.) *Tralles.*

Zama, -ae, f. *Zama.*

———

domī, *at home* (**499**).

humī, *on the ground.*

mīlitiae, *in the field (of war).*

rūrī, *in the country.*

———

182. 1. Corinthī clārum vidēbāmus templum quod nunc dēlētur. 2. Statua Athēnae antīquīs temporibus Athēnīs vidēbātur. 3. Ubi nunc est illa statua quam ōlim vidēbant hominēs? 4. Rōmānī Scīpiōnis victōriīs

fuērunt laetī.   5. Quem clārum prīncipem necāvērunt
Poenī Carthāginī?   6. Prīncipem Rōmānum, cui nōmen
fuit Rēgulus, necāvērunt.   7. Meus frāter domī manēbat.
8. Humī diū iacēbant mīlitēs quī vulnera multa et gravia
habēbant.   9. Rōmānī domī mīlitiaeque clārī fuērunt.
10. Frūstrā diū Trallibus manēbimus.

183. 1. Hannibal kept the horsemen and infantry at
Capua.   2. The fear of Hannibal kept the citizens in the
city.   3. Meanwhile peasants furnished grain for the
horses, food for the men.   4. At Zama in Africa Han-
nibal was defeated by Scipio.   5. At Delphi there was
a famous temple.   6. By whom was the temple at Delphi
built?   7. Why are you lying on the ground, lazy boys?
8. Men, be brave at home and in the field.

———•◦•———

LESSON XXX.

Second Conjugation. — *Continued.*

184. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, future perfect indica-
tive, and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō (512).**

———

185. 1. Monuit, monuerat, monuerit.   2. Monuērunt,
monuerant, monuerint.   3. Monuī, monitus sum.   4. Mo-
nuerit, monitus erit.   5. Monueram, monitus eram.
6. Monuistī, monuerās, monueris.   7. Monitus est,
monita erat, monita erit.   8. Monuisse, monitus esse.

186. 1. Mōvī, mōveram, mōverō.   2. Mōtus sum,
mōtus eram, mōtus erō.   3. Praebitus est, praebitus erat,

praebitus erit. 4. Vīdit, vīderat, vīderit. 5. Vīsus est, vīsus erat, vīsus erit. 6. Terruērunt, terruerant, terruerint. 7. Territī sunt, territī erant, territī erunt. 8. Dēlētum est, dēlētum erat, dēlētum erit.

187. 1. We had, we had had, we shall have had. 2. They had, they had had, they will have had. 3. We saw, we were seen. 4. We had seen, we had been seen. 5. We shall have seen, we shall have been seen. 6. He filled, he increased. 7. They remained, they mourned.

188. *Vocabulary.*

Caesar, -aris, m. *Caesar,* p. 117.

dēmīgrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, remove, *go away.*

Pompēius, -ēī, m. *Pompey.*

posteā, adv. *afterwards.*

poterat, *could, was able.*

poterant, *could, were able.*

quia, conj. *because.*

189. 1. Sine scūtīs mīlitēs pūgnāre nōn poterant. 2. Hannibal Capuae sine multō cibō manēre nōn poterat. 3. Cūr Hannibal in Āfricam dēmīgrāvit ex Ītaliā? 4. Quia in Āfricā erat māgnus terror. 5. Caesar quī Rōmae mānserat māgnā cum celeritāte ex urbe properāvit. 6. Caesar multum ex Galliā aurum portāverat. 7. Id aurum, quod ā Caesare portātum erat, in antīquō templō habitum est. 8. Hōc aurum Caesar ex templō posteā mōvit. 9. Caesar secundō bellī annō Pompēium quī fuit inimīcus superāvit.
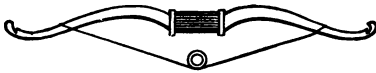
ARCUS.

LESSON XXXI.

Comparison of Adjectives.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

190. In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

191.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altus (alto-), *high*	altior	altissimus
brevis (brevi-), *short*	brevior	brevissimus
audāx (audāci-), *bold*	audācior	audācissimus

a. Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem vowel, if there is one, and adding -ior; the superlative by adding -issimus.

miser (misero-), *wretched*	miserior	miserrimus
ācer (ācri-), *keen*	ācrior	ācerrimus

b. Observe that adjectives in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus to the positive. The comparative is formed as in adjectives in -us.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

192.   *Paradigm.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
N.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
G.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
D.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Ac.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
Ab.	altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus

a. The comparative of all adjectives except **plūs,** *more* **(207),** is declined like **altior ;** the superlative like **bonus.**

b. Compare and decline in the comparative, **cārus, grātus, fortis, prūdēns.**

193. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Virtūs hominibus cārior est quam aurum,**

2. **Virtūs hominibus cārior est aurō,**

virtue is more precious to men than gold.

3. **Via est brevior,** *the way is rather* (or *too*) *short.*
4. **Via est brevissima,** *the way is very short.*

a. Observe that the comparative may be followed, as in the first sentence, by **quam.** If **quam** is used, the two objects compared (**virtūs** and **aurum**) are in the same case.

b. But **quam** may be omitted, as in the second sentence ; then the comparative is followed by the ablative. The ablative can be used only in place of **quam** and the nominative, or **quam** and the accusative.

194. Rule. — *The comparative is followed by the ablative when* **quam** *(than) is omitted.*

c. Observe in 3 and 4 an occasional use of the comparative meaning *too* or *rather*, and of the superlative meaning *very*.

195. *Vocabulary.*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*
angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*
imperātor, -ōris, m. *commander, general.*
iter, itineris, n. *way, march, journey* **(499).**

mōns, montis, m. (monti-), *mountain* **(496).**
nix, nivis, f. (nivi-), *snow.*
Padus, -ī, m. *the Po.*
sapiēns, -entis, *wise.*
ūtilis, -e, *useful.*

umbra, -ae, f. *shade.*

196. 1. Quis urbem pulchriōrem quam Rōmam vīdit ?
2. Quis urbem pulchriōrem Rōmā vīdit?   3. Aestāte um-
bra grātior est quam hieme.   4. Mīles gladium longiōrem
habuit.   5. Hōc iter ad castra Caesaris est brevissimum.
6. Montēs altissimī aestāte nive sunt albī.   7. Padus
fuit Ītaliae flūmen pulcherrimum.   8. Quod flūmen pul-
chrius Padō Poenī viderant?   9. Arma quibus Rōmānī
pūgnābant gravia erant.   10. Helvētiī angustōs fīnēs
habuērunt.   11. Quod iter est brevius quam illud?
12. Quod iter est brevius illō?

197. 1. What commander have you seen braver
than Caesar?   2. Did not his name terrify the Gauls ?
3. The bravest men are not always the wisest.   4. Seas
are deeper than rivers.   5. What is more useful to men
than money?   6. My companion was very prudent.
7. The companion whom we had was very wise.   8. My
sword is rather long.
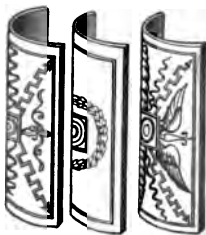
Scuta.

LESSON XXXII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.*

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

The following tables are given for reference.

198. Six adjectives in -**lis** drop the final vowel of the stem and add -**limus** to form the superlative:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, *easy.*	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, *hard.*	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, *like.*	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, *unlike.*	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, *low.*	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, *slender.*	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um

199. The following also form their superlative irregularly. The positives are not used in the nominative singular masculine.

exterus, *outward.*	exterior, *outer, exterior.*	extrēmus extimus	} *outermost, last.*
inferus, *below.*	inferior, *lower.*	infimus imus	} *lowest.*
posterus, *following.*	posterior, *later.*	postrēmus postumus	} *last.*
superus, *above.*	superior, *higher.*	suprēmus summus	} *highest.*

200. The following want the positive. They form the comparative and superlative from prepositions or adverbs.

[cis, citrā, *on this side.*]	citerior, *hither.*	citimus, *hithermost.*
[in, intrā, *in, within.*]	interior, *inner.*	intimus, *inmost.*
[prae, prō, *before.*]	prior, *former.*	primus, *first.*
[prope, *near.*]	propior, *nearer.*	proximus, *next.*
[ūltrā, *beyond.*]	ūlterior, *further.*	ūltimus, *furthest, last.*

201. Some adjectives are compared, as in English, by means of adverbs:

idōneus, *fit;* magis idōneus, *more fit;* māximē idōneus, *most fit.*

202.   *Model Sentences.*

1. Hōrum Gallōrum fortissimī erant Belgae, *of these Gauls the bravest were the Belgians.*

2. Multī mīlitum necātī sunt, *many of the soldiers were killed.*

3. Plūs pecūniae habent quam virtūtis, *they have more (of) money than (of) worth.*

a. Observe that each genitive denotes a *whole* of which a *part* is taken. This genitive is called the *Partitive Genitive.*

203. **Rule.** — *The partitive genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.*

a. Sometimes ē (ex) with the ablative is used instead of the partitive genitive : multī ex mīlitibus, *many of the soldiers.*

204.   *Vocabulary.*

Brūtus, -ī, m. *Brutus.*

citerior, -ius, *hither.*

collis, -is, m. (colli-), *hill.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n. *wisdom* (59).

difficilis, -e, *difficult, hard.*

dissimilis, -e, *unlike,* with dat.

facilis, -e, *easy.*

Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*

īnferus, -a, -um, *below.*

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. *size.*

Ocelum, -ī, n. *Ocelum,* a town.

pars, partis, f. (parti-), *part, share.*

pēnsum, -ī, n. *task, lesson.*

propior, -ius, *nearer,* with dat.

superus, -a, -um, *high.*

ūlterior, -ius, *further.*

205. 1. Multum itineris est angustum sed facillimum.
2. Hominēs Āfricae hominibus[1] Eurōpae sunt dissi-

---

[1] Dative.

millimī. 3. Pēnsum quod est facile omnibus placet.
4. Illud oppidum, Ocelum nōmine, est citeriōris Galliae
ūltimum. 5. Gallī quōs prīmā hōrā vidimus in superiōre
parte collis erant. 6. Sed secundā hōrā īnferiōrem partem
complēverant. 7. Ocelī vīgintī ex equitibus vulnerātī sunt.
8. Brūtus, vir summī cōnsilī, ūltimus Rōmānōrum appellā-
tus est. 9. Prīmā lūce pars hostium in monte vidēbātur
ā mīlitibus. 10. Urbs Rōma marī[1] nōn erat proxima.
11. Omnium collium quōs vidēmus ille est māgnitūdine
castrīs māximē idōneus.

206. 1. What easier task do you see than this?
2. We have seen more difficult things.[2] 3. These new
books are very unlike in size.[3] 4. Which[4] of those
hills is the nearest? 5. What towns are very near that
river yonder, the Po? 6. In a very short time the
bravest of the enemy were frightened. 7. All the
soldiers that we saw on the next hill were Gauls.
8. Whose horses are handsomer than Marcus's?

[1] Dative.

[2] Omit and use the neuter plural of the adjective.

[3] See **168.**

[4] Masculine gender. Why?
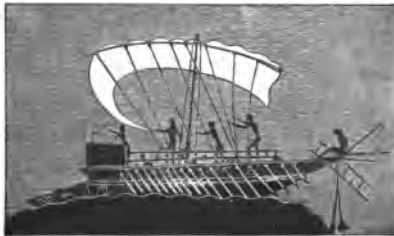
NAVIS PIRATA.

LESSON XXXIII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.

207. The following adjectives form the comparative and superlative irregularly:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, *good.*	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, *bad.*	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, *great.*	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, *much.*	⎫ ——, plūs (208)	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī, -ae, -a, *many.*	⎭	
parvus, -a, -um, *small.*	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, senis, *old.*	senior [1]	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, *young.*	iūnior [1]	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, *old.*	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

208. Declension of **plūs**, *more*, plur. *more* or *many.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. F.	*N.*	*M. F.*	*N.*
N.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Ac.	——	plūs	plūris, -ēs	plūra
Ab.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

209.   *Model Sentences.*

1. Caesar sex annis minor nātū erat Pompēiō, *Caesar was six years younger (younger by six years) than Pompey.*

2. Arcēs decem pedibus sunt altiōrēs quam mūrus, *the towers are ten feet higher (higher by ten feet) than the wall.*

---

[1] Instead of senior, māior nātū (*greater by birth*) is often used,   and instead of iūnior, minor nātū; but nātū is sometimes omitted.

a. ●bserve that the ablatives **annīs** and **pedibus** answer the
question (*by*) *how much ?* and denote the ▶EGREE OF ▶IFFER-
ENCE between the objects compared.

210. Rule. — *Degree of difference is expressed
by the ablative.*

211.   *Vocabulary.*

Catilīna, -ae, m. *Catiline.*	**prūdentia, -ae,** f. *wisdom,*
Cicerō, -ōnis, m. *Cicero,* p. 141.	*prudence, foresight.*
interdum, adv. *sometimes.*	**semper,** adv. *always.*
nātū, abl., m. *by birth, in age.*	**senex, senis,** *old* (**499**).
ōrātor, -ōris, m. *orator.*	**sex** (indecl.), *six.*
pigritia, -ae, f. *laziness.*	**timeō, -ēre, timuī, ——,** *fear.*

Senex, used mostly of persons, and implying respect.
Vetus, much more used as an adjective, and applied to
persons and things.

———————

212. 1. Pompēius sex annīs māior nātū erat quam
Caesar. 2. Nōnne ōrātor quoque clārissimus sex annīs
māior[1] erat Caesare? 3. Quid erat eī nōmen? 4. Cicerō,
quī ōrātōrum Rōmānōrum māximus appellātur. 5. Optimī
ōrātōrēs interdum sunt pessimī cīvēs. 6. Sed Cicerō
cīvis optimus erat et ācerrimus cōnsul. 7. Sapientissimīs
cōnsiliīs Rōmam servāvit, quam Catilīna dēlēre tentāvit.
8. Optimōs[2] amāmus, timēmus pessimōs. 9. Catilīna
ab omnibus bonīs cīvibus timēbātur. 10. Multō melius[3]
est amārī quam timērī, et nōn difficilius.

———————

[1] See p. 80, note 1.

[2] *The best* (*men*). See p. 44,
note 2.

[3] Neuter, because the infini-
tive is regarded as a neuter
noun.

213. 1. A man with a large head[1] is not always superior in wisdom. 2. It is much easier to love friends than enemies. 3. What is worse than laziness? 4. Very many of the soldiers had more courage[2] than prudence.[3] 5. The oldest wines are not always the best. 6. My brother, who is older than Sextus, is a head[4] taller than Marcus. 7. Was not Caesar a better general than Pompey? 8. Caesar had a great many[5] friends.

LESSON XXXIV.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

FORMATION.

214. *Models.*

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
grātus, *agreeable.*	grāto-	grātē, *agreeably.*
miser, *wretched.*	misero-	miserē, *wretchedly.*
pulcher, *beautiful.*	pulchro-	pulchrē, *beautifully.*

a. Observe that adverbs from adjectives with o-stems are formed by changing the o to ē.

fortis, *brave.*	forti-	fortiter, *bravely.*
ācer, *eager.*	ācri-	ācriter, *eagerly.*
prūdēns, *wise.*	prūdenti-	prūdenter, *wisely.*

b. Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives with i-stems by adding ter to the stem.

c. Observe that stems in -nti- drop ti before ter.

---

[1] See **140.** [3] See **193**, *a.* [5] Express *a great many* by
[2] See **202**, 3. [4] See **209.** one word.

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus, *much.*	multum, *much.*
facilis, *easy.*	facile, *easily.*
impūnis, *unpunished.*	impūne, *with safety.*

d. The accusative singular neuter of the adjective is some-times used as an adverb.

citus, *quick.*	citō, *quickly.*
subitus, *sudden.*	subitō, *suddenly.*
prīmus, *first.*	prīmō, *at first.*

e. The ablative singular neuter of the adjective is sometimes used as an adverb.

COMPARISON.

215.   *Models.*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
grātē, *agreeably.*	grātius	grātissimē
miserē, *wretchedly.*	miserius	miserrimē
ācriter, *eagerly.*	ācrius	ācerrimē
fēlīciter, *luckily.*	fēlīcius	fēlīcissimē
bene,[1] *well.*	melius	optimē
male, *badly, ill.*	pēius	pessimē
multum, *much.*	plūs	plūrimum
——	magis	māximē

a. Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective ; and that the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing, as in the positive, the final o of the stem to ē.

b. If the adjective is irregular in comparison, the adverb is also irregular.

c. Form adverbs from the following adjectives and compare them : **brevis (brevi-),** *short,* **līber (lībero-),** *free,* **aeger (aegro-),** *weak,* **similis (simili-),** *like.*

[1] Formed irregularly from **bonus.**

216. *Vocabulary.*

ācrlter, adv. *eagerly, fiercely.*
amplius, adv. *more, longer.*
cārē, adv. *dearly.*
cōpia, -ae, f. *plenty, abundance.*
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe; ought, must.*
dīligenter, adv. *diligently.*

diūtius, adv., comp. of diū, [superl., diūtissimē], *longer.*
facile, adv. *easily.*
fidēliter, adv. *faithfully.*
ibi, adv. *there, in that place.*
lēx, lēgis, f. *law.* [(152, *a*).
parēns, -entis, m. and f. *parent*

pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, ——, (w. dat.) *obey.*
subitō, adv. *suddenly.*

217. 1. Mīlitēs Rōmānī virtūte Gallōs facile superābant. 2. Longīs hastīs multō fortius pūgnābant. 3. Amplius sex hōrīs fortissimē pūgnāvērunt. 4. Cōnsul Rōmae diūtius manēbat quam Capuae. 5. Caesar castra mōvit et subitō oppidum oppūgnāvit. 6. Hieme montēs altissimī cōpiā nivis complentur. 7. Tum miserī rūsticī in aedificiīs, animālia in agrīs vīvunt (*live*). 8. Puerī [1] parentēs cārissimē amāre dēbent. 9. Parentēs puerīs cōnsilium optimum dant. 10. Prō eīs dīligentissimē labōrant. 11. Puerī, parentibus [2] pārēte, quibus omnia dēbētis. 12. Lēgibus [2] patriae fidēlissimē pārēre dēbēmus.

218. 1. The Gauls were more easily frightened than the Romans. 2. Did not Caesar stay a very long time in Gaul? 3. There he fought battles most successfully. 4. Suddenly he moved his camp into lower Italy. 5. The elders [3] who were in the city remained, and luckily were saved. 6. That boy laughs much; he is merry. 7. Laughing [4] is much better than mourning. [5] 8. Children sometimes do not obey their parents faithfully.

---

[1] *Children.*
[2] Notice the dative with pāreō.
[3] *Older* (*men*).
[4] *To laugh.*
[5] *To mourn.* Cf. **212,** 10.

219.   *Colloquium.*

PATER ET FĪLIOLUS.

P. **Q**uid, mī fīliole, in scholā hodiē discēbās?
little son   learn

F. **D**iscēbam, mī pater, pēnsum de adverbiīs longissi-
mum.

P. **C**uī partī ōrātiōnis est adverbium simillimum?
speech

F. **S**imillimum, ut opīnor, est adverbium adiectīvō.
as   I think

P. Rēctē, puer; sed illud mihi explicā, sī poteris: Sī, ut
explain   if   you can   as

dīcis, adverbium adiectīvō est simile, unde nōmen trāxit?
say   whence   has derived

F. Fortasse propter hōc, quia saepissimē verbīs
perhaps   on account of   very often   verbs

adiungitur.
it is joined

P. Optimē, fīliole; ēn tibi āssem!
behold for you   penny

LESSON XXXV.

Third Conjugation. — Ĕ-Verbs.

Regō, (STEM rege) *rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.**

220. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative,
and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive,
of **regō** (**513**).

a. Compare the forms of **regō** with those of **amō** and **moneō**.
See wherein they are alike, and wherein they differ.

---

221. 1. Regit, regēbat, reget. 2. Regitur, regēbātur,
regētur. 3. Regunt, regēbant, regent. 4. Reguntur,

regēbantur, regentur. 5. Regis, regēbās, regēs. 6. Regeris, regēbāris, regēris. 7. Regimus, regimur. 8. Regēbāmus, regēbāmur. 9. Regēmus, regēmur. 10. **Regere, regī.** 11. Regite, regiminī. 12. Rege, regere.

a. Like regō inflect in both voices the same tenses of **dūcō,** *lead*, **mittō,** *send,* and **scrībō,** *write.*

222. 1. He leads, he is led. 2. He was leading, he was led. 3. He will lead, he will be led. 4. They lead, they are led. 5. To lead, to send, to write. 6. To be led, to be sent, to be written. 7. We shall send, we shall be sent. 8. You were leading, you were led. 9. Does he lead ? Is he sent ? Does he write ? 10. Write, lead,[1] send. 11. Be thou led, be ye led. 12. I lead, I am led.

223. *Vocabulary.*

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dē-
fēnsus, *defend, protect.*
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus,
lead, conduct.
dum, conj. *while, as long as.*
epistula, -ae, f. *letter.*
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *bear,
carry on, wage (war).*
iuvenis, -e, *young* (207).

Labiēnus, -ī, m. *Labienus.*
legiō, -ōnis, f. *legion.*
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus,
write, write out.
sī, conj. *if, whether.*
uxor, -ōris, f. *wife.*
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *con-
quer, defeat.*

224. 1. Dēfendite, O cīvēs, hanc pulcherrimam urbem. 2. Dīligentissimē eam dēfendere dēbētis. 3. Sī ācriter pūgnābitis, uxōrēs līberōsque dēfendētis. 4. Sī Caesar est in urbe, facillimē dēfendētur. 5. Is semper hostis

---

[1] The present imperative second singular is dūc for dūce.

vincit.   6. Caesar sex legiōnēs in ūlteriōrem Galliam
mittit.   7. Bellum cum Gallīs ibi gerēbātur.   8. Eae
legiōnēs quās Caesar mittit ā Labiēnō dūcuntur.   9. Eā
aestātė, dum Caesar bellum gerit[1] in ūlteriōre Galliā,
Pompēius Rōmae fuit.   10. Fuitne Pompēius imperātor
melior quam Caesar?

225. 1. The town will be defended by the most skillful
generals.   2. At this time many lands are ruled by kings.
3. Boys and girls, write letters to all your[2] friends.
4. You ought to write them with great care.   5. Who
of our generals will lead the legions into battle?   6. If
Caesar leads[3] them, they will fight with the greatest
courage.   7. Send all the elders into the citadel.   8. The
younger men, whose valor is great, will defend the city.

———— ••• ————

LESSON XXXVI.

226.   Reading Lesson.

CORNELIA'S JEWELS.

Tiberius Gracchus et Gāius Gracchus erant fīliī Cor-
nēliae, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī fīliae.   Iī puerī bonīs artibus
flōruērunt.   Ā mātre ēducātī sunt et ab[4] eā sermōnis
ēlegantiam discēbant.   Cornēlia erat mulier sapientissima.
Cum Campāna mātrōna ōrnāmenta sua[5] pretiōsissima eī[6]
ostendēbat, Cornēlia duōs[7] fīliōs vocāvit.   "Haec," inquit,
"sunt mea ōrnāmenta."

---

[1] *Was carrying on;* the pres-
ent indicative with dum is often
used of a past act.

[2] Omit.

[3] *Shall lead.*

[4] *From.*

[5] *Her (own).*

[6] Feminine.

[7] *Two.*

227. 1. Cornelia had two sons. 2. The elder was called Tiberius,[1] the younger Caius.[2] 3. They were boys of very good qualities.[3] 4. For their mother faithfully educated them. 5. Elegance of speech is a great ornament to boys. 6. If boys are well trained, they learn to obey their elders.[4] 7. Ladies always like[5] to display jewels, if they have them. 8. What precious jewels did Cornelia display?

228. *Vocabulary.*

ars, artis, f. (arti-) *art, skill;* in plu., *qualities.*

cum, conj. *when, while.*

discō, -ere, didicī, ——, *learn.*

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *train, educate.*

flōreō, -ēre, flōruī, ——, *flourish, be conspicuous, be distinguished.*

libenter, adv. *gladly.*

māter, -tris, f. *mother.*

mātrōna, -ae, f. *matron, lady.*

mulier, mulieris, f. *woman.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. *ornament, jewel.*

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, *show, display.*

pretiōsus, -a, -um, *precious.*

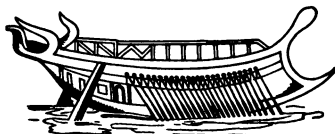**sermō, -ōnis,** m. *speech, conversation.*

[1] See **37.**

[2] Note that the Latin **Gāius** is *Caius* in English.

[3] See **140.**

[4] *Their elders = older (men);* dative.

[5] *Like to display = gladly display.*

NAVIS LONGA.

LESSON XXXVII.

Fourth Declension.

229. Gender. — Nouns of the fourth declension in **-us** are masculine, those in **-ū** are neuter, except so far as **13**, 2 is applicable.

a. **Domus,** *house,* **īdūs,** *the Ides,* **manus,** *hand*, and a few others, are feminine.

230. *Paradigms.*

	gradus, m. *step.*		cornū, n. *horn.*	
	STEM, **gradu-**		STEM, **cornu-**	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	gradus	gradūs	cornū	cornua
G.	gradūs	graduum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	graduī, -ū	gradibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	gradum	gradūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	gradū	gradibus	cornū	cornibus

231. Artus, *joint,* portus, *harbor,* and a few other nouns, together with dissyllables in **-cus,** have the dative and ablative plural in **-ubus** : **portubus, arcubus,** *with bows.*

232. **Domus,** *house,* has also forms of the second declension. See **499.** **Domī** is used only as a locative.

233. Decline together **māgnus exercitus,** *large army;* **mea manus,** *my hand;* **longum cornū,** *long horn.*

234.   *Vocabulary.*

cornū, -ūs, n. *horn; wing (of an army)* ; p. 130.

dexter, -era, -erum (oftener **-tra, -trum**), *right.*

domus, -ī, f. *house, home* (499).

elephantus, -ī, m. *elephant.*

equitātus, -ūs, m. *cavalry.*

exercitus, -ūs, m. *army.*

manus, -ūs, f. *hand; band, force.*

peditātus, -ūs, m. *infantry.*

portus, -ūs, m. *harbor.*

prope, prep. with acc., *near.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left.*

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, *hold, keep.*

---

235. 1. Meā[1] manū hās epistulās māximā cum cūrā scrībam. 2. Multī Rōmānōrum artem bellī puerī didicērunt. 3. Corinthī erant duo[2] portūs. 4. In quibus portubus erant plūrimae nāvēs. 5. Dextrum exercitūs cornū fortissimē pūgnāvit. 6. Caesar exercitum in proximum oppidum dūcit. 7. Subitō peditātus hostium in[3] ēius legiōnēs mittitur. 8. Exercitūs Gallōrum equitātū flōrēbant. 9. Bellum ab eīs equitātū[4] peditātūque gerēbātur. 10. Scīpiōnis equitātus territus est elephantīs Hannibalis.

236. 1. The general with all the cavalry held the right wing of the army. 2. At home and in the field we ought to learn prudence. 3. Many animals fight with their[5] horns. 4. Bands of the enemy were seen near the house of Marcus. 5. And in the further part of the harbor they saw a rather[6] large ship. 6. Marcus holds his[5] sword in his right hand. 7. And with it[7] he will defend his wife and children. 8. In his left hand he carries a shield.

---

[1] *My own.*   [3] *Against.*   [5] Omit.   [6] See **194,** *c.*

[2] *Two.*   [4] See **84.**   [7] *And with it = with which.*

LESSON XXXVIII.

Third Conjugation. — *Continued.*

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

237. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **regō (513).**

a. Compare these forms with the same tenses of **amō** and **moneō.**

238. 1. Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit. 2. Rēctus est, rēctus erat, rēctus erit. 3. Rēxērunt, rēxerant, rēxerint. 4. Rēxī, rēcta sum. 5. Rēxistis, rēctae estis. 6. Rēxerimus, rēctae erimus. 7. Rēximus, rēctī sumus. 8. Rēxisse, rēctus esse. 9. Rēxī, rēxeram, rēxerō. 10. Rēctus sum, rēctus eram, rēctus erō.

239. 1. He has led, he has been led. 2. He had led, he had been led. 3. You will have led, you will have been led. 4. They have sent, they have been sent. 5. He led, he was led. 6. We had sent, we had been sent. 7. You wrote, you led, you sent. 8. To have led, to have sent. 9. To have been led, to have been sent.

240. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Caesar Labiēnum in Galliam cum exercitū misit,** *Caesar sent Labienus into Gaul with an army.*

2. **Domī cum līberīs mānsimus,** *we stayed at home with our children.*

241. Rule. — *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with* **cum.**

a. If the ablative is modified by an adjective, **cum** is sometimes omitted : **māgnō exercitū,** *with a large army.* See ablative of manner **(92, 93).**

242.   *Vocabulary.*

caedēs, -is, f. (caedi-), *slaughter, carnage.*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *depart, withdraw.*

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, amid.*

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *read.*

senātus, -ūs, m. *senate.*

locus, -ī, m. (pl. **locī** and **loca**) *place, position.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *place, put; pitch* (*camp*).

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, reckon, believe.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m. *the Rhine.*

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, the other side of, beyond.*

---

243. 1. Epistulās lēgī quās scrīpsistī. 2. Oppidum positum est[1] inter flūmen Rhēnum et montem. 3. Cōnsul urbem Rōmam dēfendit. 4. Ūnus[2] ducum māgnum exercitum in Galliam dūxerat. 5. Scīpiō in Hispāniam cum sex legiōnibus missus erat. 6. Bellum in Ītaliā ab Hannibale gestum est. 7. Saepissimē exercitūs Rōmānōs vīcit Hannibal. 8. Dux castra prope portum posuit. 9. Hostēs pīla ē locō superiōre mīsērunt. 10. Dum haec in dextrō cornū geruntur,[3] sinistrum[4] fugātum est. 11. Quō[5] plūrēs erant hostēs, eō[5] māior caedēs fuit. 12. Virtūtem mīlitī putāmus optimum esse ōrnāmentum.

---

[1] **positum est** = *is situated.*

[2] *One.*

[3] See p. 87, n. 1.

[4] Supply **cornū.**

[5] **Quō . . . eō,** *by which . . . by that* = *the . . . the.* See **210.**

244. 1. Caesar wrote many letters to[1] the senate. 2. And these[2] letters were read by the chief of the senate. 3. Labienus hastened with all the infantry towards the river. 4. He pitched his camp on the other side of the river. 5. Large bands of the enemy were seen in many places. 6. They had withdrawn from[3] the place in which the camp had been pitched. 7. At daybreak several[4] soldiers departed from the camp. 8. If the army is destroyed,[5] the citizens will mourn.

[1] ad.   [2] *And these = which.*   [3] ex.   [4] aliquot.   [5] Future.
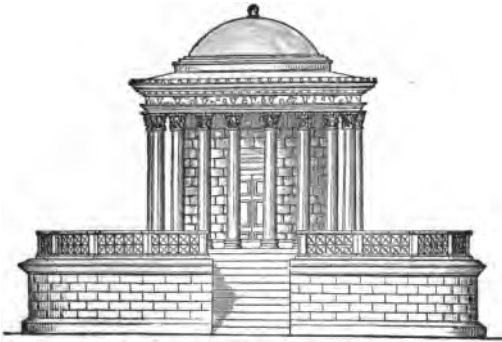
TEMPLUM.

LESSON XXXIX.

Personal and Reflexive Pronouns.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

245. *Paradigms.*

FIRST PERSON.

Ego, *I.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	ego, *I.*	nōs, *we.*
G.	meī, *of me.*	nostrūm, or nostrī, *of us.*
D.	mihi, (mī), *to or for me.*	nōbis, *to or for us.*
Ac.	mē, *me.*	nōs, *us.*
Ab.	(ā) mē, *by me.*	(ā) nōbis, *by us.*

SECOND PERSON.

Tū, *thou.*

N.	tū, *thou (you).*	vōs, *you, ye.*
G.	tuī, *of thee (you).*	vestrūm, or vestrī, *of you.*
D.	tibi, *to or for thee (you).*	vōbis, *to or for you.*
Ac.	tē, *thee (you).*	vōs, *you.*
Ab.	(ā) tē, *by thee (you).*	(ā) vōbis, *by you.*

THIRD PERSON (REFLEXIVE).

Suī, *of himself,* etc.

N.	——	——
G.	suī, *of himself, herself, itself.*	suī, *of themselves.*
D.	sibi, *to or for himself,* etc.	sibi, *to or for themselves.*
Ac.	sē (sēsē), *himself,* etc.	sē (sēsē), *themselves.*
Ab.	(ā) sē (sēsē), *by himself,* etc.	(ā) sē (sēsē), *by themselves.*

a. The personal pronoun of the third person, when not reflexive, is supplied by the demonstrative is, ea, id, and sometimes by hīc and ille.   See **100,** *f,* and **119,** *c.*

246.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Ego sum tristis, tū es laetus,** *I am sad, you are glad.*
2. **Omnēs hominēs sē** (or **sēsē**) **amant,** *all men love themselves.*
3. **Quis vestrūm sē nōn amat ?** *who of you does not love himself?*
4. **Fīlius mēcum domī Rōmae manet,** *my son stays at home with me at Rome.*

a. Observe in 1 that the subjects **ego** and **tū** are expressed. In general, nominatives of personal pronouns are not expressed ; when they are used, it is for emphasis or contrast.

b. The reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands, as in 2.

c. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are often used with reflexive sense : **tū tē amās,** *thou lovest thyself;* **omnēs nōs amāmus,** *we all love ourselves.*

d. The forms **nostrūm** and **vestrūm** are chiefly used in the partitive sense. See **202.**

e. The preposition **cum** with the ablative of personal pronouns is appended to them : **mēcum,** *with me;* **tēcum,** *with thee*, etc. So also with relatives and interrogatives : **quibuscum,** *with whom.*

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

247. The possessive adjectives are formed from the stems of personal pronouns.   They are sometimes used as pronouns.

meus, -a, -um, *my, mine* (voc. sing. masc., **mī**).

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, thine ; your, yours.*

suus, -a, -um (reflexive), *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.*

noster, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours.*

a. When *your, yours* refers to one person, use **tuus ;** when to more than one, use **vester.**

248.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Ego quī haec scrībō sum tuus amīcus,** *I who write this am your friend.*

2. **Tū quī haec scrībis es meus amīcus,** *you who write this are my friend.*

a. Observe that the relative does not change to conform to the *person* of the antecedent, and that the verb of the relative clause is in the same person as the antecedent.

3. **Hīc est ēius liber,** *this is his book.*

4. **Librum suum amīcō dat,** *he gives his (own) book to a friend.*

b. Notice the difference between **ēius,** *his,* and **suum,** *his,* the latter referring back to the subject (reflexive like **sē**). In EXERCISE **129** "his" occurs in 2, 5, 6, and 7. If translated into Latin, in which two would it be expressed by **ēius,** and in which by **suus?**

249.   *Vocabulary.*

bene, adv. *well.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *preserve, save.*

culpa, -ae, f. *blame, fault.*

laus, laudis, f. *praise, glory.*

trīstis, -e, *sad, gloomy.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus,[1] *be strong, be in good health.*

---

250. 1. Ego vōs videō, vōs mē vidētis.   2. Putātisne mē trīstem esse[2]?   3. Ego nōn sum trīstis, sed vōs mihi trīstissimae esse vidēminī.[3]   4. Ego et tū[4] Cornē-liae ōrnāmenta nostra ostendēmus.   5. Illane nōbīs

---

[1] In the principal parts of verbs invariably intransitive, the future active participle is given instead of the perfect passive.

[2] *Me to be sad = that I am sad.*

[3] The passive of **videō** often means *seem.*

[4] **Ego et tū** = *you and I.*

ostendet ōrnāmenta sua? 6. Sī tū et frāter tuus valē-
tis, bene est. 7. Estne Mārcus māior nātū frātre suō?
8. Nōs quī tē laudāmus illōs culpāmus. 9. Tibi laus,
illīs erit culpa. 10. Cōnservāte vōs,[1] uxōrēs, līberōs,
fortūnāsque vestrās. 11. Caesar omnēs equitēs sēcum
habuit. 12. Librī quōs nōs legimus sunt optimī.

251. 1. If your father is in good health, it is well.
2. You and I[2] are in good health. 3. I have put my
fortunes into your hands. 4. Preserve them diligently
for me and my children. 5. You who find fault with
us praise them. 6.[3] My life is dear to me, yours to
you. 7. While you were laughing, we were mourning.
8. Cornelia saw *her* jewels, but praised her own. 9. What
helmets (*galeae*) are handsomer than the Romans'?

[1] See **246,** *c.*

[2] *You and I = we,* hence the
verb is first person plural. Cf.
250, 4.

[3] In this order: *to me my
life, to you yours is dear.* Cf.
250, 9.

GALEAE.

LESSON XL.

Subjunctive of Purpose with ut and nē.

252. Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive of **sum** (516), and of the active and passive of **amō** (511) and **moneō** (512).

a. In the same way inflect the present and imperfect subjunctive of **culpō**, *blame*, **iuvō**, *help*, **moveō**, *move*, **dēleō**, *destroy*, and **iubeō**, *bid*, *order*.

253. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Sē armant ut pūgnent**, *they arm themselves that they may fight, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, to fight, for the purpose of fighting.*

2. **Sē armābant ut pūgnārent**, *they armed themselves that they might fight, to fight,* etc.

3. **Cīvēs pūgnant nē oppidum dēleātur**, *the citizens fight that the town may not be destroyed, lest the town be destroyed.*

4. **Servī labōrābant nē culpārentur**, *the slaves were toiling, lest they should be blamed, so that they might not be blamed.*

a. Observe that the subordinate clauses express the *purpose* or *motive* of the subjects of the principal clauses, **ut** introducing a positive and **nē** a negative purpose.

b. Observe that the verbs in the purpose clauses are in the subjunctive, and that the tense depends upon the tense of the principal clause, the present (**pūgnent, dēleātur**) following the present (also the future), and the imperfect (**pūgnārent, culpārentur**) following a past tense.

c. Notice the various ways of translating **ut**.

d. Purpose clauses are often called *final clauses.*

254. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used with* **ut** *and* **nē** *to express purpose.*

a. The infinitive is not to be used in Latin, as it is in English, to express purpose, but the Latin purpose clause may often be translated by the English infinitive.

---

255. 1. Eum mīsit ut, —
    oppūgnāret, dēlēret, occupāret, tenēret, cōnservāret.

2. Nōs mittit ut, —
    pūgnēmus, dēleāmus, necēmus, terreāmus, culpēmus.

3. Mittuntur ut, —
    oppūgnent, dēleant, occupent, teneant, obsidēs sint.

4. Mīssī sunt nē oppidum, —
    oppūgnārētur, dēlērētur, occupārētur, tenērētur.

5. Tē mittam ut, —
    ōrnēs, praebeās, aedificēs, moneās, rīdeās, laudēs.

6. Vōs moneō ut, —
    amētis, moveātis, laudētis, placeātis, fortēs sītis.

7. Eum monuit nē, —
    ōrnāret, movēret, culpāret, piger esset.

8. Monētur nē, —
    superētur, moveātur, occupētur, teneātur, sit piger.

256. 1. I was sent, —
    to besiege, to destroy, to seize, to hold, to overcome.

2. They will send him, —
    to fight, to destroy, to kill, to frighten, to furnish.

3. You were sent for the purpose of, —
    toiling, pleasing, ploughing, furnishing, filling.

4. They were sent that the city might not be, —
    besieged, destroyed, seized, held, taken by storm.

5. He advises us, —
    to love, to move, to praise, to laugh, to be prudent.

6. We advised him not to be, —
    surpassed, moved, seized, frightened, a soldier.

LESSON XLI.

Fifth Declension.

THE STEM ENDS IN ē.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

257. GENDER. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except **diēs,** *day,* which is commonly masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

258.   *Paradigms.*

	diēs, *day.*		**rēs,** *thing.*	
STEM,	**diē-**		**rē-**	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

a. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have nominative and accusative plural.

259.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Decem annōs Trōia oppūgnābātur,** *Troy was besieged for ten years.*

2. **Arx alta est centum pedēs,** *the citadel is a hundred feet high.*

a. The accusative **annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time,* pedēs, extent of *space.* The accusative, then, is used to answer the question *how long?* or *how far?* (in *time* or *space*), and may be called the ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

260. Rule. — *Extent of* **time** *or* **space** *is expressed by the accusative.*

261. *Vocabulary.*

aciēs, -ēī, f. *line of battle.*

circum, prep. w. acc., *around.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning.*

diēs, -ēī, m. *day.*

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *draw up, form, arrange, instruct.*

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssus, *bid, order, command.*

mīlle (indecl. in sing.); plu. mīlia, mīlium, *thousand.*

mīlle passuum, *a thousand (of) paces, mile.*

nē, conj. *lest, that not.*

passus, -ūs, m. *pace, step.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f. *plain.*

posterus, -a, -um, *following, next, coming after.*

relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relīctus, *leave, abandon.*

rēs, reī, f. *thing, circumstance, affair.*

ut, conj. *that, in order that.*

---

262. 1. Caesar castra in māgnā plānitiē posuit. 2. Haec plānitiēs erat duo[1] mīlia passuum lāta. 3. Ibi aciem īnstrūxit. 4. Sex hōrās equitātus peditātusque in aciē mānsērunt. 5. Sed hostēs nocte discesserant. 6. Posterō diē discessit Caesar ex illō locō. 7. Labiēnum cum parvā manū relīquit ut castra servāret. 8. Multōs diēs exercitus sine frūmentō erat. 9. Et rēs erant in angustō.[2] 10. Labiēnus igitur nūntium dē hāc rē ad Caesarem mīsit.

263. 1. The enemy's cavalry saw a broad plain near the hill. 2. What did they see in this plain? 3. They saw the line of battle of the Romans. 4. And they were greatly alarmed at this circumstance. 5. But on the next day the plain was abandoned. 6. The Romans had

---

[1] *Two.*   [2] Adjective used as noun ; *a strait.*

withdrawn from the plain in order to save a town **which** was near by.[1] 7. Around the town was a wall twenty **feet** high. 8. For many hours the enemy assaulted this **wall.**

264.   *Colloquium.*

PRAECEPTOR ET DISCIPULUS.

P. Omnium dēclīnātiōnum quae est difficillima?
<small>which</small>

D. Tertia mihi vidētur difficillima.

P. Quārē ita cēnsēs?
<small>why   think</small>

D. Varietātis causā terminātiōnum in nōminātīvō singu-
<small>variety   on account</small>
lārī. Genus quoque est mihi molestissimum, praesertim
<small>gender   troublesome   especially</small>
nōminum in *is* dēsinentium.
<small>nouns   ending</small>

P. Tenēsne memoriā quae nōmina plūrālem genetīvum in *ium* habeant?
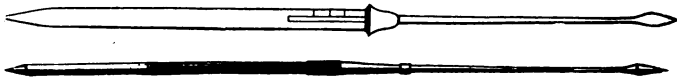
D. Prīmum nōmina in *is* et *ēs* dēsinentia, sī in gene-
<small>first</small>
tīvō singulārī nōn crēscunt; ut *hostis* et *nūbēs.*
<small>increase   as</small>

Deinde monosyllaba in *s* vel *x* dēsinentia, sī ante *s* et
<small>then</small>
x stat cōnsonāns; ut *urbs* et *arx.*
<small>stands   consonant</small>

Tum nōmina in *ns* et *rs* dēsinentia; ut *cliēns* et *cohors.*

Dēnique neutra in *e, al, ar* dēsinentia; ut *mare, animal,*
calcar. <small>neuters</small>

[1] See **179.**

PILA.

LESSON XLII.

Third Conjugation. — Verbs in -iō.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE WHITHER.

Capiō, (STEM **cape**), *take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**

265. Verbs in -iō of the third conjugation vary in inflection in certain tenses from the model verb **regō.**

a. Learn all the tenses of the indicative, the present imperative, and the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **capiō** (514).

b. Compare the present, imperfect, and future indicative of **capiō** with the same tenses of **regō,** and note the differences.

---

266. 1. Capit, capiēbat, capiet. 2. Capiunt, capiēbant, capient. 3. Capior, capiēbar, capiar. 4. Capimus, capimur. 5. Capis, caperis. 6. Capiēbātis, capiēbāminī. 7. Cēpī, captus sum. 8. Cape, capere. 9. Cēperāmus, captae erāmus. 10. Caperis, cēperis.

a. In like manner practice upon **faciō,** *make,* and **iaciō,** *throw.*

267. 1. He was making, he was throwing. 2. It was made, it was thrown. 3. They make, they were making, they will make. 4. I take, I am taken. 5. We took, we were taken. 6. Take (thou), make,[1] throw. 7. They will be taken, they will be thrown. 8. I shall take, I shall be taken. 9. To take, to be taken. 10. He makes, he takes, he throws.

---

[1] **Fac** for **face.** Cf. p. 86, n. 1.

268.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Caesar ad urbem properāvit,** *Caesar hastened to the city.*

2. **Caesar Rōmam properāvit,** *Caesar hastened to Rome.*

3. **Exercitum in · Graeciam mīsit,** *he sent an army into Greece.*

4. **Exercitum Athēnās mīsit,** *he sent an army to Athens.*

a. Observe in 1 and 3 that the place whither is expressed by the accusative with a preposition, while in 2 and 4 there is no preposition.

269. Rule. — *Names of towns used to express* **place whither** *are put in the accusative without a preposition.*

a. The accusatives of **domus,** *home,* and **rūs,** *country,* are used like names of towns.

270.   *Vocabulary.*

Hereafter derivations will be indicated in the vocabularies. English derivatives will be indicated in *this type.*   See **342.**

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, capture.*

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus, *desire, wish.*

decem (indecl.), *ten.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *do, make.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, ——, *flee, run away.*

itaque, conj. *and so, therefore.*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl.*

lēgātus, -ī, m. *ambassador, lieutenant ; deputy.*

nēmō, -inī (dat.), m. [nē-homō] (no gen. or abl.) *no one.*

pāx, pācis, f. *peace.*

proelium, -ī, n. *battle.*

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], *take back, receive, recover.*

sē (mē, tē, etc.) **recipere,** *withdraw, retreat, betake one's self.*

271. 1. Ā Gallīs Rōmam missī sunt lēgātī. 2. Lēgātī quōs Gallī mīserant ā senātū in templō receptī sunt. 3. Pācem cum Rōmānīs facere cupiēbant, quī eōs proeliō vīcerant. 4. Captīvōs quoque, quōs Rōmānī cēperant, recipere cupīvērunt. 5. Decem diēs Rōmae manēbant. 6. Sed Rōmānī cum eīs pācem nōn fēcērunt. 7. Nam eōs et omnia bona[1] dēlēre cupīvērunt. 8. Itaque lēgātī in Galliam, suam patriam, sē recēpērunt. 9. Quibuscum bellum gessērunt Gallī? Cum Rōmānīs.

272. 1. I wish to hurl a javelin. 2. That is easy; take the javelin in[2] your right hand. 3. Yours[3] is too[4] long; take mine, which is a foot shorter. 4. Why are you running away? 5. Because the thing is too difficult for me. 6. Shall you flee home? 7. I shall betake myself to yonder[5] forest, where nobody will see me. 8. Shall you leave me without a comrade? 9. The fault is yours; you have been laughing.[6]
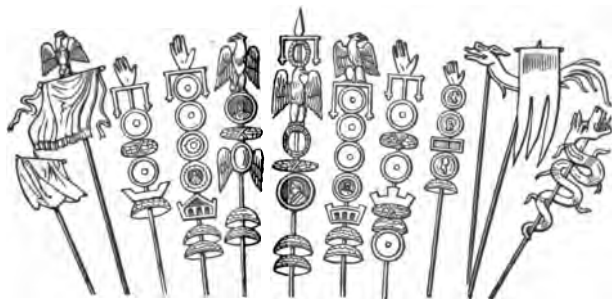
---

[1] *Goods, possessions;* adjective as noun. [2] *Into.* [3] Agrees with pīlum understood.

[4] See **194**, c. [5] See **100**, c. [6] *Have been laughing = have laughed.*

SIGNA.

LESSON XLIII.

273. **Reading Lesson.**

A BATTLE.

Eō diē Caesar ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit, et iter ad
flūmen fēcit. Quae rēs tamen hostibus nōta est, quōrum
peditātus ā nostrīs[1] in summō[2] colle vidēbātur. Tum
Caesar in dextrō et sinistrō cornū equitēs conlocāvit ut
peditātum iuvārent, et mīlitum suōrum animōs ad pūgnam
ita incitāvit : " Mīlitēs, omnis reī pūblicae spēs in nostrā
virtūte posita est. Audācēs fortūna iuvat ; fortibus erit
victōria." Illī ācriter in nostram aciem impetum fēcē-
runt, sed neque eōrum pīla neque māgnī clāmōrēs nos-
trōs[1] terruērunt. Brevī tempore ex[3] omnibus partibus
hostīs vīcērunt, quī trāns flūmen fūgērunt. Dux eōrum
captus[4] et Rōmam missus est.

274. 1. On the next day bands of horsemen were
seen near the hill. 2. Our line of battle was drawn up
by Caesar. 3. Meanwhile their[5] leader had aroused
their minds so that they might not fear the attack of
the Romans. 4. "Soldiers," said he, "you see those
Romans yonder on the plain. 5. They are brave men,
but are not we much braver ? 6. You will fight for
your country, which they are trying to destroy ; for your
children, whom they wish to capture. 7. Make your
attack upon their left wing ; put that to flight, and victory
will be yours.[6] 8. Then depart to your homes,[7] where
you shall receive the rewards of victory."

[1] *Our (men).*
[2] *The top of.*
[3] *In.*

[4] **Est is often omitted with compound tenses.**
[5] **Eōrum or suus ?**
[6] *To you.*
[7] See **269,** *a.*

275 *Vocabulary.*

ciāmor, -ōris, m. *shout, cry.*

con-locō (col-) -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, station.*

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, lead forth.*

impetus, -ūs, m. *attack, assault.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, excite, incite.*

ita, adv. *so, thus.*

ne-que, conj. *neither.* neque ... neque, *neither ... nor.*

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn, find out.* Perf. *know.*

praemium, -ī, n. *reward.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public.*

rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f. *republic, commonwealth.*

spēs, speī, f. *hope.*

tamen, adv. *nevertheless, yet.*

————◦◦————

LESSON XLIV.

Subjunctive of Result with ut and ut nōn.

276. Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of regō (**513**) and capiō (**514**).

277. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Hostēs ita terrentur ut fugiant**, *the enemy are so frightened that they flee.*

2. **Hostēs ita terrēbantur ut fugerent**, *the enemy were so frightened that they fled.*

3. **Is mīles tam fortis erat ut ā duce laudārētur**, *that soldier was so brave that he was praised by the general.*

4. **Is puer tam malus est ut ā magistrō nōn laudētur**, *that boy is so bad that he is not praised by the teacher.*

a. Observe that the dependent clauses express a *result*, and that a negative result is introduced by ut nōn. Compare these model sentences with those illustrating *purpose* (**253**), and observe that a negative purpose is introduced by nē.

b. Result clauses with the perfect subjunctive do not require special illustration.

278. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used with* ut *and* ut nōn *to express result.*

279. 1. Accidit ut, —
  ostendam, dūcātur, capiās, capiātur, cupiantur.
2. Accidit ut, —
  cupiāmus, capiantur, dūcātis, mittantur, faciam.
3. Accidit (perf.) ut nōn, —
  vincerēmus, mitterētis, dēfenderet, pōnerentur.
4. Accidit (perf.) ut nōn, —
  facerētis, fugerētis, mitterētur, vincerentur.

280. 1. It happens that, —
  I take, I lead, he sends, he departs, they display.
2. It happens that, —
  we learn, we are led, you are conquered, you
    throw.
3. It happened that, —
  they did not defend, they did not receive, they were
    not led out.

281.　　　　　*Vocabulary.*

ac-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, ——, [ad, cadō], *fall upon; happen.*

aut, conj. *or;* aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*

cō-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [com, (g)nōscō], *learn, understand.* Perf. *know.*

cōpiae, -ārum (pl. of cōpia, 216), f. *troops, forces.*

dīligēns, -entis, *industrious, diligent.*

eō, adv. *thither, to that place.*

fluctus, -ūs, m. *wave.*

paucus, -a, -um (generally plu.), *few, little.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rule, reign.*

salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety.*

spatium, -ī, n. *space, room.*

tam, adv. *so, so much.*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such.*

vīx, adv. *with difficulty, hardly.*

In the following sentences both purpose and result clauses are found.

282. 1. Is mīles tam fīdus erat ut Rōmam ā suō duce mitterētur. 2. Eō missus est ut epistulās ad cōnsulem portāret. 3. Quis nostrūm est tam sapiēns ut omnia cōgnōscat? 4. Puerī, este tam dīligentēs ut plūrima discātis. 5. Recipite vōs[1] ad silvās nē ab hostibus capiāminī. 6. Nōs[1] recēpimus tantā celeritāte[2] ut nēmō caperētur. 7. In silvīs tam diū manēbāmus ut hostēs impetum in nōs nōn facerent. 8. Hostēs tam dēfessī erant ut multōs diēs aciem nōn īnstruerent. 9. Nostrī[3] in proximum collem sē recēpērunt nē Gallī superiōrem locum occupārent. 10. Ita ācriter pūgnātum est[4] ut paucī aut nostrōrum aut illōrum relinquerentur. 11. Rōmulus ita ā populō amātus est ut multōs annōs rēgnāret.

283. 1. The waves were of so great size[5] that in a short time the ships were filled with water. 2. So fierce[6] was the enemies' attack that our men put all hope of safety in flight. 3. The soldiers are neither so terrified as to flee, nor so eager as to make an attack. 4. Labienus, lead out the troops from the camp in order to draw up the line of battle. 5. So great were the forces of the enemy that Labienus departed from that place. 6. We all desire peace in order that we may educate our children. 7. Between the mountain and the river the space is so narrow that the army makes its way with difficulty. 8. That horse is so spirited that he is not easily led.

---

[1] Accusative.
[2] 93.
[3] Cf. **273**, note 1.

[4] *It was fought = they fought,* or *the battle was fought.*
[5] **140.**   [6] Ācer.

LESSON XLV.

Numerals.

284. Learn the cardinals (505) :

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
G.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Ac.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs	tria
Ab.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLU.
N.	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

a. In what respects does the declension of **ūnus** vary from that of **bonus**? Compare the declension of **hīc** and **ille (100)**. Observe that **trēs** is declined like the plural of **brevis, 163.**

b. The cardinal numerals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable : **quattuor hominēs,** *four men;* **quattuor hominum,** *of four men.*

c. The hundreds, not including **centum,** are declined like the plural of **bonus.**

d. **Mīlle** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective ; in the plural it is a neuter noun, and is followed by the partitive genitive : **mīlle hominēs,** *a thousand men;* **tria mīlia hominum,** *three thousand men.*

e. In **vīgintī ūnus, vīgintī duo, centum ūnus,** and similar cases, the declinable numeral is still inflected, as when standing alone : **centum tria proelia,** *one hundred and three battles.*

285. 1. Ūnus collis, ūnīus hōrae, ūnī legiōnī. 2. Duo impetūs, cum duābus manibus. 3. Tribus portubus, tria nōmina, ā tribus rūsticīs. 4. Quattuor impetūs, cum quattuor manibus. 5. Decem vulnera, sexāgintā diēs. 6. Vīgintī mulierēs, cum ūnā et vīgintī mulieribus. 7. Duodētrīgintā gradūs, duae et vīgintī domūs. 8. Centum annī, ducentae mātrēs.

286. 1. In one plain, in two battles. 2. For seven lieutenants, with eighteen legions. 3. Forty-one things, fifty-three birds. 4. Of seventy-five steps, with a hundred and one steps. 5. With a thousand paces, with eight thousand paces.

287. 1. Ūna avis vēr (*spring*) nōn facit. 2. Rōmulus, prīmus Rōmānōrum rēx, trīgintā septem annōs rēgnāvit. 3. Flūmen centum pedēs lātum, vīgintī duōs pedēs altum fuit. 4. Caesar quīnquāgintā sex annōs vīxit (*lived*). 5. Trium frātrum Mārcus nātū māximus est. 6. Mōns decem mīlia pedum altus fuit. 7. Fīlius meus duōbus annīs est minor nātū quam tua fīlia. 8. Tū mē mīsistī ut ēius nōmen cōgnōscerem. 9. Eōrum quīnque mīlia fūgērunt nē caperentur.

288. 1. Alexander the Great reigned only[1] thirteen years. 2.[2] Cicero lived to be sixty-three years old. 3. There were ten thousand soldiers[3] in the plain on that day. 4. We had been in the city nine hours. 5. We send him to do your task. 6. Flee, boys, so as not to be taken !

[1] Omit. [2] Express as in **287, 4.** [3] See **284,** *d.*

289.   *Colloquium.*

FRATER ET SORORCULA.

F. Age, sorōrcula mea, sī tibi placet, ambulābimus.
      come   walk

S. Quō est tibi in animō, cāre frāter, ambulāre?
      whither
Nōnne in agrōs?

F. Ita est, in agrōs et in umbrā silvārum.
      =yes

S. Libenter tēcum ambulō, tamen —
                                  but

F. Quid? cūr tantum dubitās, sī, ut dīcis, mēcum
ambulās libenter?   hesitate   as you say

S. Nōli mē rīdēre, mī frāter.   Metuō anguēs.
      don't   laugh at   fear   snakes
Frīgidus, Ō puerī, fugite hinc, latet anguis in herbā,
      cold   hence lurks snake   grass
ut cantat Vergilius.
      sings

F. Nōli metuere, mea sorōrcula.   Venī; repperī ubi
frāga   mātūra sint.   come   I have found
strawberries ripe   are

S. O quam suāve!   In mē nōn iam est mora.
      how delightful   no longer

F. Domī manēre est admodum molestum.
                          downright stupid

S. Ista sunt, neque mihi iam est in animō.
      those things are =yes indeed.

F. Ecce, frāga! iam corbulās complēbimus.   Nōnne
      lo=here are   now   baskets
est suāvissimum?
      jolly

DENARIUS.

LESSON XLVI.

Numerals. — *Continued.*

Irregular Adjectives.

290. Learn the first twenty-one ordinals, and read the rest. The ordinals are declined like **bonus.** (500.)

---

291. The following adjectives have the ending -**ĭus** in the genitive singular of all genders, and -**ĭ** in the dative ; the plural is regular : —

alĭus, alĭa, alĭud, *another.*

alter, altera, alterum, *the other (of two).*

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of two).* [*no.*

nūllus, -a, -um, *no one, none,*

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, sole.*

tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, all.*

ūllus, -a, -um, *any.*

ūnus, -a, -um, *one, alone.*

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two) ?*

uterque, ŭtraque, ŭtrumque, *each (of two), both.*

292. *Paradigm.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	alĭus	alĭa	alĭud	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
G.	alīus	alīus	alīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
D.	alĭī	alĭī	alĭī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Ac.	alĭum	alĭam	alĭud	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Ab.	alĭō	alĭā	alĭō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

a. alĭus . . . alĭus, *one . . . another.*

alĭī . . . alĭī, *some . . . others.*

alĭus . . . alĭud, *one one thing, another another.*

alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other.*

293. *Vocabulary.*

ante Chrīstum nātum, *before the birth of Christ* = B.C.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *say.*

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give.*

familia, -ae, f. *household.*

ingenium, -ī, n. *genius.*

nōbilis, -e [nōscō], *of high birth, noble.*

orbis, -is, m. (orbi-), *circle:* orbis terrārum, *the world.*

sempiternus, -a, -um [semper], *everlasting.*

Vergilius, -ī, m. *Vergil.*

voluptās, -ātis, f. [volō], *pleasure.*

---

294. 1. Rōma duōs hominēs summī ingenī, alterum imperātōrem, alterum poētam, habuit. 2. Alterius familia nōbilis, alterīus rūstica[1] fuit. 3. Nūllī imperātōrī, nūllī poētae, māior laus est data quam illīs. 4. Caesar victor fuit tōtīus Galliae. 5. Vergilius tōtī orbī terrārum voluptātem dedit. 6. Utrī fuit melior fōrtūna? 7. Nātus est[2] Caesar centēsimō annō ante Chrīstum nātum. 8. Nātus est Vergilius annō septuāgēsimō ante Chrīstum nātum. 9. Neutrīus fuit vīta longissima, sed utrīusque erit laus sempiterna. 10. Dē illīs hominibus alius aliud dīcet, nōs utrumque laudāmus.

295. 1. On the second day the camp was moved. 2. By the bravery of the tenth legion alone the whole army was saved. 3. We shall remain three days at Rome, the sixth, seventh, and eighth. 4. But on the ninth day we shall hasten without any delay to the mountains. 5. The king had ruled so well that the whole people loved him. 6. Vergil was thirty years younger[3] than Caesar. 7. To neither was granted a very long life. 8. Some will give greater praise to the one, others to the other.

---

[1] *Of the country.*   [2] **Nātus est** = *was born.*   [3] See p. 80, note 1.

. LESSON XLVII.

The Infinitive used as in English.

296. Learn the indicative, the infinitive, the present and imperfect subjunctive of **possum (517)**, and review the infinitives present and perfect of **sum** and the model verbs.

a. **Possum** is compounded of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**. To inflect **possum**, prefix the syllable **pot** to the forms of **sum**, changing t to **s** before **s**, and dropping the **f** of **fui**, **fueram**, etc.

297. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Errāre est humānum**, *to err is human.*
2. **Potuī vidēre**, *I could (was able to) see.*
3. **Urbs capta esse dīcitur**, *the city is said to have been taken.*
4. **Puella esse bona cupiēbat**, *the girl wished to be good.*
5. **Nōs esse bonōs cupiunt**, *they desire us to be good.*

a. Observe that in each sentence the infinitive is used precisely as in English. These uses, as presenting no difficulty of syntax, have been illustrated in exercises of preceding lessons without comment. Cf. 1 with **212**, 10.

b. The infinitive used as in 2 and 4, to complete the meaning of the main verb, is called the *complementary infinitive.*

c. Note that the predicate adjective **bona** (also the participle **capta**) agrees with the subject of the main verb.

298. Rule.—*A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

d. In 5, **nōs** is called the subject of the infinitive **esse**. Note that here the adjective after the infinitive agrees with the subject of the infinitive.

299. Rule. — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

300. 1. Dux equitātum terrēre et fugāre potest. 2. Castra movērī et pōnī potuērunt.[1] 3. Puer discere potuisse dīcitur. 4. Discēdere, fugere potuimus. 5. Illae mātrēs amārī et iuvārī dēbent. 6. Amātae esse dīcuntur. 7. Properābō ut tē iuvāre possim. 8. Ille[2] properāvit ut nōs iuvāre posset. 9. Cūr nōn properāvimus ut eōs recipere possēmus? 10. Tē fortem benīgnumque esse cupiēbant. 11. Iter breve fuisse dīcitur. 12. Mīlitēs vulnerātī esse dīcuntur.

301. 1. You can carry and throw a spear. 2. They can read and write. 3. Who was not able to think and learn? 4. They will be able to take the town. 5. You bid me to be adorned and to delight. 6. They are said to have been terrified and routed. 7. He was said to have been brave and to have conquered. 8. They were thought to have labored and received a reward. 9. The army was thought to be getting defeated.[3] 10. He bade you be diligent.

302. 1. Vidērī[4] est nōn semper esse. 2. Vergilius et Caesar māximī ingenī[5] fuisse putantur; uter māior fuisse dīcitur? 3. Quis nostrūm rem pūblicam cōnservārī nōn cupit? 4. Is quī rem pūblicam cōnservāre tentābit et vītam prō eā dabit, laudem recipiet sempiternam. 5. Quis māius virtūtis praemium recipere aut cupere

---

[1] As the subject castra is plural, the verb must be plural.

[2] See **245,** *a.*

[3] Present passive infinitive.

[4] See page 96, note 3.

[5] See **140.**

potest? 6. Prō patriā, prō salūte pūblicā vītam dare dēbēmus.   7. Nēmō tōtīus exercitūs tam fortis fuit ut hostium impetum nōn timēret.   8. Alter hōc pēnsum, alter illud facere poterat; sed neuter utrumque pēnsum[1] facere poterat.   9. Exercitus hostium inopiā[2] aquae magis[3] labōrāvisse nostrō exercitū dīcēbātur.   10. Quī parēns līberōs suōs esse bonōs nōn cupit?

---

[1] Utrumque pēnsum = *both tasks.*   [2] See **132**.   [3] *More.*
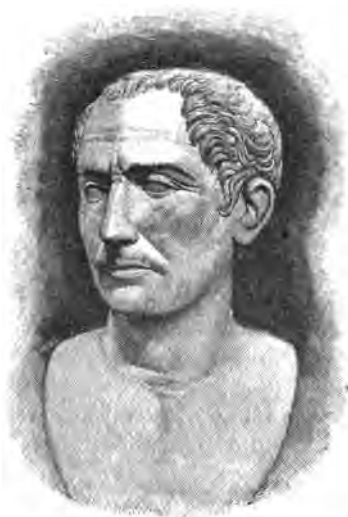
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

LESSON XLVIII.

The Demonstratives iste, ĭdem, ipse.

303.   *Paradigms.*

ĭste, *that, that of yours.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N. ĭste	ĭsta	ĭstud	ĭstĭ	ĭstae	ĭsta
G. ĭstīus	ĭstīus	ĭstīus	ĭstōrum	ĭstārum	ĭstōrum
D. ĭstĭ	ĭstĭ	ĭstĭ	ĭstĭs	ĭstĭs	ĭstĭs
Ac. ĭstum	ĭstam	ĭstud	ĭstōs	ĭstās	ĭsta
Ab. ĭstō	ĭstā	ĭstō	ĭstĭs	ĭstĭs	ĭstĭs

ĭdem, *same.*

N. ĭdem	e'adem	ĭdem	{ eĭdem ‖ ĭĭdem	eaedem	e'adem
G. ēius'dem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrun'dem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eĭdem	eĭdem	eĭdem	{ eĭs'dem ‖ ĭĭs'dem	eĭsdem ‖ ĭĭsdem	eĭsdem ‖ ĭĭsdem
Ac. eun'dem	eandem	ĭdem	eōs'dem	eāsdem	e'adem
Ab. eōdem	eādem • eōdem	{ eĭs'dem ‖ ĭĭs'dem	eĭsdem ‖ ĭĭsdem	eĭsdem ‖ ĭĭsdem	

ipse, *self* (*himself,* etc.).

N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsĭ	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsĭ	ipsĭ	ipsĭ	ipsĭs	ipsĭs	ipsĭs
Ac. ĭpsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsĭs	ipsĭs	ipsĭs

a. Iste is declined like ille (100).

b. Ĭdem is declined like *is* (119), with **m** changed to **n** before the suffix **dem.**

c. Wherein does the declension of **ipse** vary from that of **bonus**?

d. Decline together **ĭstud caput, ĭdem dĭēs, ipsa rĕs.**

304.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Istam epistulam lēgī,** *I read that letter of yours.*

2. **Eōdem diē ad tē epistulam mīsī,** *on the same day I sent a letter to you.*

3. **Imperātor ipse exercitum dūxit,** *the general himself led the army.*

4. **Ipse exercitum dūxistī,** *you led the army yourself.*

e. **Iste** and **Ídem** are used as demonstrative adjectives and demonstrative pronouns. Cf. **101**, *a.*

f. **Iste** is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, and hence is called the demonstrative of the second person : **iste equus,** or **iste tuus equus,** *that horse of yours.* Cf. **100**, *b* and *c.* **Iste** also sometimes denotes contempt. **Ídem** is used just as " same " is in English.

g. **Ipse,** *self,* the emphatic appositive pronoun, is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun (expressed or understood) with which it agrees as an adjective.   It must be carefully distinguished from **sē,** *self,* which is reflexive, not emphatic :

  homō sē culpāvit nimium, *the man blamed himself too much ;*
  homō frātrem, tum sē ipsum culpāvit, *the man blamed his brother, then himself.*

305.   *Vocabulary.*

arcus, -ūs, m. *bow;* p. 73.

Asia, -ae, f. *Asia.*

barbarus, -ī, m. *a barbarian.*

Dārēus, -ī, m. *Darius.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *contend, fight.*

dīvitiae, -ārum, f. (pl.) *riches.*

herī, adv. *yesterday.*

imperium, -ī, n. *power, rule ; empire.*

perīculum, -ī, n. *danger, peril.*

prae-dīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *proclaim, boast.*

**prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, ——, go forward, advance, proceed.*

Sōcratēs, -is, m. *Socrates.*

vultus, -ūs, m. *countenance.*

306. 1. Dē istīs rēbus ad tē scrībere mox poterō. 2. Nēmō quī dē sē ipsō praedicat esse sapiēns dīcitur. 3. Ipsī[1] vestrī amīcī vōs culpāvērunt. 4. Ista vestra pēnsa mihi sunt grātissima. 5. Uterque vestrūm est īdem quī[2] semper fuit. 6. Nōmen ipsīus[3] poētae, cūius librōs nunc legimus, est clārissimum. 7. Mīlitēs tōtīus exercitūs ab ūnō imperātōre ductī sunt ut hostīs vincere posset. 8. Sōcratēs ille[4] et in perīculō ipsō et in salūte eundem vultum semper habuisse dīcitur. 9. Semper erat eōdem vultū. 10. Hodiē eadem facis quae herī.

307. ALEXANDER ADDRESSES HIS SOLDIERS.

1. There will soon be a battle. 2. You yourselves have long desired to see this day. 3. Now you will be able to vanquish those[5] barbarians, who fight with bows and arrows. 4. They are the same soldiers whom you have often defeated. 5. They are led by king Darius himself, whose ancestors[6] made war on[7] your country. 6. This day you will fight for[8] the rule of all Asia. 7. Victory will be yours,[9] if you have[10] the same brave spirit, the same daring, that[11] you have always had. 8. The riches of the king himself, that barbarian, and of all his cities will be yours. Forward !

---

[1] *Even.*
[2] Īdem . . . quī, *same . . . as.*
[3] *Very.*
[4] **100,** *d.*

[5] The iste of contempt.
[6] **Māiōrēs.**
[7] In with acc.
[8] Use dē.

[9] *To you.*
[10] *Shall have.*
[11] **Quam.**

LESSON XLIX.

The Indefinite Pronouns.

308. *Paradigms.*

aliquis, *some,* *any* (*person* or *thing*).

SINGULAR.

N.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
G.	alicū′ius	alicūius	alicūius
D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL.

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	ali′quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	ali′quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. How do the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative plural of aliquis and quis differ?

quīdam, *a,* *a certain* (*person,* *thing*).

SINGULAR.

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
G.	cūius′dam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
D.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Ab.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL.

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrun′dam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibus′dam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.	quibus′dam	quibusdam	quibusdam

b. Other important indefinites declined like **quīdam** are the
following : —

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
quisquam	——	quidquam (no pl.)	*any one (at all).*
quīlibet	quaelibet	quidlibet, quodlibet	*any one (you please).*
quīvīs	quaevīs	quidvīs, quodvīs	
quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque	*each, every.*

c. In the neuter of the indefinites **quid-**forms are used as
nouns, **quod-**forms as adjectives.

309.   *Vocabulary.*

Aegyptus, -ī, f. *Egypt* (13, 2).	**isthmus, -ī,** m. *isthmus.*
certus, -a, -um, *certain, trust-worthy.*	**Nīlus, -ī,** m. *the Nile.*
figūra, -ae; f. *shape, form.*	**nūper,** adv. [novus], *recently.*
fōns, fontis, m. *fountain, source.*	**scrīptor, -ōris,** m. *writer.*
	spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look at.*
in-cōgnitus, -a, -um, *unknown.*	**tantum,** adv. [tantus], *only.*
	vērus, -a, -um, *true.*

310.   DE AFRICA.

1. Scrīptor quīdam vetus scrīpsit, "Āfrica īnsulae
est similis." 2. Cuīvīs, quī Āfricae figūram spectābit,
hōc esse vērum vidēbitur, nam isthmus angustissimus
est inter Asiam et Āfricam. 3. Ab aliīs scrīptōribus
veteribus Aegyptus pars Asiae esse habētur.[1] 4. Antī-
quīs temporibus māxima illīus terrae pars incōgnita erat,
sed nōn hodiē. "Semper aliquid novī[2] ex Āfricā."
5. Tum dē Nīlī fontibus nēmō quidquam certī cōgnōverat ;
nunc eīdem fontēs cuīlibet nōtī sunt ; nam ā quibusdam
virīs audācibus repertī[3] sunt. 6. Nūper quoddam flūmen

---

[1] *Is considered.*   [2] See **203.**   [3] *Have been discovered.*

Āfricae māximum cōgnitum[1] est.   7. Quis vestrūm nō-
men hūius flūminis dare potest? — Quis nōmina virōrum
illōrum quī dē eō repperērunt?[2]

311. 1. There were two consuls each year in the
Roman state.   2. That boy has something in his left
hand.   3. I learned something new[3] yesterday.   What
new thing?   4. Certain soldiers of the five hundred tried
to flee, so as not to be taken.   5. We do not fear any one
at all of those chiefs.   6. A part of each summer we
remain in the country.

—◦◦—

LESSON L.

312.   Reading Lesson.

[See introductory note to LESSON XXI.]

CICERONIS EPISTULA AD TERENTIAM UXOREM.

ANTE CHRISTUM NATUM XLVI.

[4]Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō.   Nōs neque dē Caesaris
adventū neque dē epistulīs, quās Philotīmus habēre dīci-
tur, quidquam certī[5] habēmus.   Sī quid[6] erit certī,
faciam[7] tē statim certiōrem.[7]   Fac[8] ut valētūdinem tuam
cūrēs.   Valē.[9]

---

[1] *Has become known.*

[2] *Have found out.* [b] See **203.**

[4] The Romans often began
their letters with the abbrevi-
ations of these five words :

      S. V. B. E. E. V.

[5] See **203.**

[6] Regularly used in the sense
of **aliquid** after **sī, nē, nisi, num.**

[7] *Make more certain = inform.*

[8] *Be sure* (p. 103, note 1).

[9] *Good-bye.*

313.   De Vitiis Hominum.

Iuppiter[1] nōbīs duās pērās imposuit : alteram, quae
nostrīs vitiīs[2] complēta est, post tergum nōbīs dedit[3] ;
alteram, in quā aliōrum vitia continentur, ante pectus
nostrum suspendit.   Quārē nōn vidēmus ea vitia quae ipsī
peccāmus.   Sed sī aliī peccant, statim eōs vituperāmus.

314.   A Father to his Daughters.

If you are in good health, it is well.   I am in good
health.   Neither in your[4] letters, nor in the letters of
your mother, has there been anything new at all about
the wound which your poor brother is said to have
received.   If anything new happens,[5] be sure[6] to inform
me without any[7] delay.   Meanwhile, be sure also to look
out for your health.   Good-bye.[6]

315.   *Vocabulary.*

ad-ventus, -ūs, m. [adveniō],
   coming, arrival.

con-tineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus
   [teneō], *contain, hold.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *care
   for, take care.*

im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -itus
   [in], *put or place upon.*

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sin,
   commit (a fault).*

pectus, -oris, n. *breast.*

pēra, -ae, f. *bag, wallet.*

quā-rē, conj. *wherefore.*

statim, adv. *immediately.*

sus-pendō, -ere, -dī, -sus
   [sub], *hang up, hang.*

tergum, -ī, n. *back.*

valētūdō, -inis [valeō], f.
   state of health, health.

vitium, -ī, n. *fault, vice.*

vituperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
   blame, censure.

---

[1] See **499.**

[2] Ablative with complēta.

[3] Dedit = imposuit.

[4] **247,** *a.*

[5] *Shall have happened.*

[6] Not singular.

[7] Ūllus is the adjective for
any after a negative, sine, etc.

LESSON LI.

Accusative and Infinitive.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

316. Learn the future infinitives of sum and the model verbs.

317. *Model Sentences.*

DIRECT STATEMENT.	INDIRECT STATEMENT.
1. **Tū scrībis,** *you are writing.*	**Dīcimus tē scrībere,** *we say that you are writing.*
2. **Epistula scrīpta est,** *a letter has been written.*	**Putāmus epistulam scrīptam esse,** *we think that a letter has been written.*
3. **Tū scrībēs,** *you will write.*	**Cōgnōvimus tē scrīptūrum esse,** *we know you will write.*

a. A comparison of each sentence of the first column with the corresponding sentence of the second column will show what is meant by "Direct Statement" and "Indirect Statement."

b. Compare now each Latin sentence of the second column with the translation. Observe that after the leading verb in the Latin, the accusative and infinitive are employed, and that the accusative is translated by the nominative, and the infinitive by the indicative. Observe also that there is nothing in the Latin corresponding to *that,* which commonly introduces the Indirect Statement in English.

318. Rule. — *Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject-accusative.*

319. *Tenses of the Infinitive.*

PRESENT.

dīcit		
dīcet	tē scrībere,	*he says that you are writing.*
dīxit		*he will say that you are writing.*
		he said that you were writing.

dīcit		*he says that the letter is being written.*
dīcet	epistulam scrībī,	*he will say that the letter is being written.*
dīxit		*he said that the letter was being written.*

FUTURE.

dīcit		*he says that you will write.*
dīcet	tē scrīptūrum esse,	*he will say that you will write.*
dīxit		*he said that you would write.*

dīcit		*he says that the letter will be written.*
dīcet	epistulam scrīptum irī,[1]	*he will say that the letter will be written.*
dīxit		*he said that the letter would be written.*

PERFECT.

dīcit		*he says that you wrote (have written).*
dīcet	tē scrīpsisse,	*he will say that you wrote (have written).*
dīxit		*he said that you wrote (had written).*

dīcit		*he says that the letter was (has been) written.*
dīcet	epistulam scrīptam esse,	*he will say that the letter was (has been) written.*
dīxit		*he said that the letter was (had been) written.*

[1] More commonly fore ut epistula scrībātur, etc.

a. The present infinitive represents an action as *going on* at the time denoted by the leading verb. The future infinitive represents an action as *yet to take place* after the time denoted by the leading verb. The perfect infinitive represents an action as *completed* at the time denoted by the leading verb.

320. Rule. — *The tenses of the infinitive denote present, future, or past time, relatively to the time of the leading verb.*

321. *Vocabulary.*

ad-sum, adesse, adfui, adfu-
   turus, *be present, be here.*

Alexander, -dri, m. *Alexander.*

arbor, -oris, f. *tree.*

canto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sing.*

frigus, -oris, n. *cold.*

iam, adv. *already, now, at
   last.* nōn iam, *no longer.*

in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus
   [capiō], *begin.*

pellō, -er'e, pepulī, pulsus,
   drive away, rout, defeat.

sēmentis, -is, f. (sēmenti-),
   (acc. -im or -em), *sowing.*

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus,
   loose, break.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs],
   hope.

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover.*

vēr, vēris, n. *spring.*

322. 1. Vēr adest; vēre[1] hiems pellitur et frīgus solvitur. 2. Vidēmus vēr adesse et vēre hiemem pelli et frīgus solvī. 3. Terra nōn iam nive tēcta[2] est. 4. Vidēmus terram nōn iam nive tēctam esse. 5. Multae avēs in arboribus cantant et aliae mox cantābunt. 6. Nōvimus multās avēs in arboribus cantāre, aliās mox cantātūrās esse. 7. Agricolae arāre et sēmentem facere incēpērunt. 8. Vidēmus agricolās arāre et sēmentem facere incēpisse. 9. Agricola spērat dīvitiās sibi futūrās esse, et nōs eadem nōbīs ipsīs spērāmus. 10. Este benīgnī, omnēs deī, agricolīs validīs, ut contentī sint.

---

[1] See **84.**   [2] The participle as an adjective, hence *is covered.*

323. 1. The sources of the Nile were unknown in ancient times. 2. It was thought by a certain ancient writer that the sources of the Nile were unknown. 3. The brave Greeks will defeat the barbarians, the army of Darius himself. 4. Alexander said that the Greeks would defeat Darius himself. 5. We think that to no general has greater praise been given than to Alexander. 6. Was not Alexander born[1] three hundred and fifty-six years before the birth of Christ?

LESSON LII.

Fourth Conjugation. — Ī-Verbs.

Audiō (stem audī-), *hear.*

Principal Parts: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.

324. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, the present and imperfect subjunctive, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of audiō (515).

a. Compare the forms of audiō with those of regō and capiō.

---

325. 1. Audiō, audiēbam, audiam. 2. Audit, audiēbat, audiet. 3. Audītur, audiēbātur, audiētur. 4. Audiar, audiāris. 5. Audī, audīre. 6. Audīmur, audiēbāmur, audiēmur. 7. Audīre, audīrī. 8. Audītis, audiēbātis, audiētis. 9. Audiunt, audiuntur. 10. Ut audiant, ut audīrent. 11. Nē audiat, nē audīret. 12. Audīte, audīminī.

a. Like audiō, inflect the same tenses of mūniō, *fortify*, pūniō, *punish*, and veniō, *come*.

[1] Nātus est.

326. 1. He hears, he is heard. 2. He was hearing, he was heard. 3. He will fortify, it will be fortified. 4. They fortify, it is fortified. 5. They were fortifying, they will be fortified. 6. To fortify, to come, to punish. 7. To be fortified, to be punished. 8. Come, fortify, punish. 9. We fortify, we come, we punish. 10. You come, you punish, you are punished. 11. That I may come, that you may fortify, that he may be punished. 12. That he might not be punished, that you might not come.

327.   *Vocabulary.*

āēr, āeris, m. (acc. āera), *air.*

aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus, *open.*

cantus, -ūs, m. *song, singing.*

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *guard, protect, defend.*

flōs, flōris, m. *flower.*

grāmen, -inis, n. *grass.*

lēnis, -e, *mild, gentle.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *fortify.*

porta, -ae, f. *gate.*

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *punish.*

re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *find, discover.*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, perceive, know (by the senses).*

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come.*

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *clothe.*

---

328. 1. Sermōnem sapientium audīre amāmus. 2. Audīmus Hannibalem annō ducentēsimō secundō ante Chrīstum nātum victum esse. 3. Lēgātus sē montem ūnum tōtum diem tenuisse dīxit. 4. Quāque hieme quīdam amīcus ad mē venit et duōs aut trēs diēs manet. 5. Vēr terram aperit vestitque grāmine flōribusque. 6. Tum quoque[1] sentīmus āera esse lēniōrem. 7. Mox

[1] Observe the difference between quoque, *also*, and quōque, ablative of quisque, *each.*

avēs domōs veterēs reperient, et eārum cantūs in **arbori-**
bus audientur.   8. Vēre cantum audīmus eārum **avium**
quae hieme audīrī nōn possunt.   9. Hieme tantum **est**
frīgus ut cibus ab eīs nōn reperīrī possit.   10. Audīmus
duās legiōnēs in Galliam missum īrī.

329. 1. I am saying the very[1] same things that you
heard from your friend.   2. Did you not say that you
had begun sowing?   3. On account of the cold I could
not begin.   4. By night a messenger comes to Caesar.
5. He says that a town friendly[2] to the Romans is
guarded by day and night.   6. "The enemy," says he,
"strong in number[3] of men, is near at hand.   7. The
townsmen are fortifying and guarding the town.   8. If
you come,[4] they will open their gates to you.   9. They
hope you will come soon with a large force.   10. The
danger will be greater if there is any[5] delay."

[1] See **306**, note 3.   [3] See **168**.
[2] **Amīcus** as an adjective.   [4] *Shall come.*   [5] **Ūllus**.
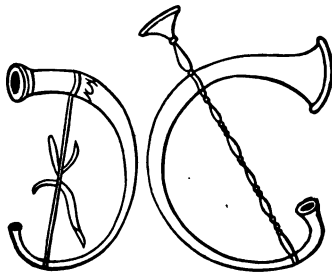
CORNUA.

LESSON LIII.

Fourth Conjugation. — *Continued.*

SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER VERBS OF FEARING.

330. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect and future infinitive, active and passive, of **audiō (515).**

a. Observe that the endings -ī, -istī, -it, etc., are the same in all ·the conjugations.

---

331. 1. Audīvit, audīverat, audīverit. 2. Audītus est, audītus erat, audītus erit. 3. Audīvērunt, audīverant, audīverint. 4. Audīvistī, audīta es. 5. Audīstis,[1] audītae estis. 6. Audītum est, audītum erat, audītum erit. 7. Audīvimus, audītī sumus. 8. Audīvisse, audītus esse. 9. Audiī,[2] audieram, audierō. 10. Audītus sum, audītus eram, audītus erō. 11. Audītūrus esse.

332. 1. He has punished, he has been punished. 2. He had fortified, it had been fortified. 3. You have come, you had come, you will have come. 4. They have fortified, they have punished, they have come. 5. We fortified, we punished, we came. 6. To have fortified, to have punished, to have come. 7. To have been fortified, to have been punished. 8. To be about to open, to be about to find. 9. To be about to be fortified, to be about to be punished.

[1] For **audīvistis.** See **337,** *b.*   [2] For **audīvī.**

333.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Timeō ut veniat,** } *I fear that he is not coming,* or
2. **Timeō nē nōn veniat,** } *will not come.*
3. **Timeō nē veniat,** *I fear that he is coming,* or *will come.*

a. Observe that verbs of fearing are followed by **ut** and **nē** with the subjunctive, and that then **ut** and **nē** *seem* to exchange meanings : **ut** = *that not;* **nē** = *that.*

b. Observe that in place of **ut**, **nē nōn** may be used with the same meaning, as in 2.

c. Notice that the present subjunctive may be translated as a future.

334.   *Vocabulary.*

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *surround.*

folium, -ī, n. *leaf.*

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [**fortis**], *endurance, fortitude.*

molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome, tiresome.*

nihil, indecl., n. *nothing.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know, know how.*

sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. plu.), *sun.*

turpis, -e, *base, disgraceful.*

vōx, vōcis, f. *voice, word.*

---

335. 1. Timēmus ut bonum cōnsilium capiās. 2. Timēmus nē malum cōnsilium capiās. 3. Timēbat ut valērem ; timēbat nē aeger essem. 4. Alius alium in pūgnā iuvābat neque timēbant nē ab hostibus circumvenīrentur. 5. Lēgātī timuērunt nē frūmentum tōtī exercituī praebērī nōn posset. 6. Audīvimus castra ab imperātōre mūnīta esse. 7. Sī frīgus hiemis solvī incipiet, et sī terra sē aperiet,[1] agricolae sēmentem facient. 8. Scīmus aestātem

---

[1] **Sē aperiet** = *opens,* i.e. *softens.*

arborēs foliīs vestītūram (esse).[1] 9. Scīmus quoque āera[2] vēre[3] lēniōrem futūrum.[1] 10. Spērāmus avīs mox adfutū-rās et in arboribus cantātūrās. 11. Timēmus nē noster sermō dē vēre, avibus, grāmine, flōribus sit molestissimus, sed quid aliud facere possumus?

336. 1. We know that the Romans were trained in the arts by the Greeks. 2. Flowers are opened by the light of the sun. 3. The lieutenant with a small band guarded the citadel for two days. 4. To know nothing is exceedingly[4] disgraceful. 5. To know many things is very useful. 6. We fear that the camp will not be fortified. 7. Did you not hear the voice of your father? 8. Those words of yours I have heard. 9. The boy feared that his brother would be punished on account of his laziness.

---

[1] In the compound forms of the infinitive esse is often omitted.

[2] See **327**.

[3] See **155**.   [4] See **194,** *c.*

MILITES ROMANI.

LESSON LIV.

Review of the Four Conjugations.

337. The conjugations are distinguished by the vowel before the ending -re of the present infinitive active. Thus:

I. **amāre,** characteristic vowel **ā.**
II. **monēre,**   "   "   **ē.**
III. **regere,**   "   "   **e.**
IV. **audīre,**   "   "   **ī.**

a. Note that verbs in -iō of the third conjugation have some forms like the fourth. Which are they?

b. In the perfect and cognate tenses, **v** between two vowels is often lost, when contraction may take place: **laudāsse** for **laudāvisse, audīstis** for **audīvistis, audieram** for **audīveram.**

---

338. 1. Amāmus, monēmus, regimus, audīmus. 2. Laudant, dēlent, regunt, capiunt, veniunt. 3. Superābam, terrēbam, pōnēbam, capiēbam, audiēbam. ǀ 4. Portāvistī, habuistī, posuistī, fūgistī, mūnīstī. 5. Parāvērunt, tenuērunt, dēfendērunt, cupiērunt, pūniērunt. 6. Amābit, monēbit, mittet, iaciet, veniet. 7. Fugātur, terrētur, pōnitur, capitur, vestītur. 8. Servāberis, tenēberis, ducēris, iaciēris, vestiēris. 9. Laudārī, praebērī, dīcī, iacī, vestīrī. 10. Ēducāta est, monita est, ēducta est, capta est, pūnīta est. 11. Portāverātis, rīserātis, rēxerātis, cēperātis, audīverātis. 12. Amāsse, amārit, nōsse, audīstī.

---

339. 1. Thou lovest, thou advisest, thou rulest, thou takest, thou hearest. 2. I shall praise, I shall remain, I shall defend, I shall take, I shall fortify. 3. Fight,

destroy, defend, throw, guard. 4. To have fought, to have destroyed, to have defended, to have thrown, to have guarded. 5. We are praised, we are moved, we are conquered, we are thrown, we are guarded. 6. It has been carried, he has been frightened, she has been led, it has been thrown, he has been heard. 7. He will be saved, he will be held, he will be sent, he will be captured, he will be clothed.

In the following exercises find sentences illustrating the various uses of the subjunctive and infinitive thus far given:

340. 1. Vēnī ut manērem. 2. Tam trīstēs sumus ut rīdēre nōn possīmus. 3. Veniēbās nē lugērēmus. 4. Dīxērunt Mārcum esse sapientem. 5. Dux timuit ut mīlitēs venīrent. 6. Mīlitēs timent nē hostēs veniant. 7. Vōs nōn timētis nē amīcī nōn veniant. 8. Venient ut maneant. 9. Dīcitur[1] rīsisse. 10. Dīcitur[2] eum rīsisse. 11. Cornēlia fīliōs suōs ēducāvit ut flōrērent. 12. Cōnsul Catilīnam, patriae hostem, monuit nē in urbe manēret. 13. Agricola vēr mox adfutūrum spērat, ut sēmentem faciat.

341. 1. You have come to stay. 2. He says that you will stay. 3. The boy is so lazy that he cannot learn. 4. The master fears that he will not learn. 5. He stays at home that he may not learn. 6. The senate sent a messenger to the army to carry letters to the consul. 7. Cicero said that there was nothing certain about the letters. 8. Why did not Jupiter put the wallet that contains our own faults before our breasts, so that we might see them?

[1] Here dīcitur is personal; *he is said*.

[2] Here dīcitur is impersonal; *it is said* (*that*).

LESSON LV.

Derivation.

342. To aid in acquiring a Latin vocabulary, a close observation of related words is very important. Beginning with **270**, the vocabularies have been prepared with a view to help the learner in this direction. The parts of compound words are separated by hyphens (**re-cipiō [capiō]**). Related words that have been previously used are put in brackets (**nōbilis [nōscō]**). These are not to be considered necessarily as the primitives or originals of the words against which they stand, but as *connected with them in formation from a common root or stem.* English derivatives are indicated by **different type.** In the general vocabulary further attention is given to this subject.

The following groups of words, selected mainly from previous vocabularies, should be carefully studied :

343.   *Models.*

1. **arma,** *arms.*   **armō,** *arm.*
2. **flōs,** *flower.*   **flōreō,** *bloom.*
3. **cūra,** *care.*   **cūrō,** *care for.*

a. Give the verbs with their meanings that correspond to the following nouns : **dōnum,** *gift,* **culpa,** *blame,* **bellum,** *war,* **fuga,** *flight,* **laus,** *praise.*

b. Give the nouns with their meanings that correspond to the following verbs : **līberō,** *set free,* **pūgnō,** *fight,* **spērō,** *hope,* **terreō,** *frighten,* **vulnerō,** *wound.*

344.   *Models.*

1. **audāx,** *bold.*   **audācia,** *boldness.*
2. **dīligēns,** *diligent.*   **dīligentia,** *diligence.*
3. **amīcus,** *friendly.*   **amīcitia,** *friendship.*

a. Give the abstract nouns with their meanings that corre-spond to the following : **prūdēns,** *prudent;* **piger,** *lazy;* **sciēns** (P. of **sciō**), *knowing;* **victor,** *victor.*

345. *Models.*

1. **iuvenis,** *young.*   **iuventūs,** *youth.*
2. **māgnus,** *great.*   **māgnitūdō,** *greatness.*
3. **līber,** *free.*   **lībertās,** *freedom.*

a. Give the abstract nouns corresponding to **vir,** *man,* **fortis,** *brave.*

b. Form a noun like **māgnitūdō,** meaning *width,* from **lātus,** *wide;* another from **altus,** *high,* and define it.

c. Form a noun like **lībērtās,** meaning *citizenship,* from **cīvis,** *citizen.*

346. *Models.*

1. **arō,** *plough,* v.   **arātrum,** *plough,* n.
2. **ōrnō,** *adorn.*   **ōrnāmentum,** *adornment.*
3. **rōdō,** *gnaw.*   **rōstrum,** *beak.*

a. What is the force of the endings -**trum** and -**mentum** respec-tively in the above words ? Give the meaning of **monumentum** from **moneō,** *remind.*

347. *Models.*

1. **scrībō,** *write.*   **scrīptor,** *writer.*
2. **vincō (vic-),** *conquer.*   **victor,** *conqueror.*
3. **imperō,** *command.*   **imperātor,** *commander.*

a. Give the meaning of **dator** from **dō,** *give;* of **doctor** from **doceō,** *teach.*

348. *Models.*

1. **Āfrica,** *Africa.*   **Āfricānus,** *of Africa, African.*
2. **Rōma,** *Rome.*   **Rōmānus,** *of Rome, Roman.*
3. **aurum,** *gold.*   **aureus,** *of gold, golden.*
4. **faciō,** *do.*   **facilis** *(that may be done),* *easy.*

a. Observe that the ending **-ānus** denotes *of* or *belonging to,* **-eus,** *made of,* and that -**ilis** denotes *capability.* Give the meaning of **oppidānus,** adj., from **oppidum,** *town;* of **nōbilis,** from **nōscō,** *know.* Form an adjective meaning *wooden* from **lignum,** *wood.*

349. *Models.*

1. **pedes,** *foot-soldier.*
   peditātus, *body of foot-soldiers, infantry.*

2. **eques,** *horseman.*
   equitātus, *body of horsemen, cavalry.*

a. What is the meaning of **comitātus** from **comes,** *comrade?* Compare **senex** with **senātus,** and explain the meaning of the latter.

350. Note the force of the prefixes in the following :

ad-ventus (**ad-veniō,** *come to*), *approach.*

ad-sum, *be near.*

ē-dūcō, *lead out.*

ex-pōnō, *put* or *set out,* *expose.*

circum-dūcō, *lead around.*

circum-veniō, *come around, surround.*

im-pōnō [**in**], *put upon, impose.*

in-struō, *build in, instruct.*

com-moveō, *move completely, disturb, alarm.*

com-pleō, *fill completely, fill up.*

con-tineō [**com, teneō**], *hold together, contain.*

prō-cēdō, *go before, go forward, advance, proceed.*

prō-pōnō, *put before, propose.*

dif-ficilis (for **dis-facilis,** *apart from easy*), *difficult.*

dis-cēdō, *go apart, depart.*

re-cipiō, *take back, receive.*

re-dūcō, *lead back.*

re-portō, *carry back.*

Note. — Continue in all succeeding vocabularies the study of derivation in this way.

LESSON LVI.

Present and Perfect Participle.

351. Learn the present and perfect participles of the model verbs.

a. Observe that there is no present passive or perfect active participle.

352. Participles are declined like adjectives, and; like them, agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case. The present participle is declined like **prūdēns (163)** with ablative singular ending in **-e,** unless used adjectively; the perfect participle like **bonus.**

353. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Fortissimē dīmicāns** { cadit, *he falls* cadet, *he will fall* cecidit, *he fell* } *fighting most bravely.*

2. **Tē in urbe manentem vīdī,** *I saw you while you were staying (you staying) in the city.*

3. **Urbs diū oppūgnāta nōn capta est,** *the city, though long besieged (having been besieged), was not taken.*

4. **Caesar eā rē commōtus in Galliam properāvit,** *because Caesar was moved (having been moved) by this circumstance, he hastened into Gaul.*

5. **Dux victus sē recipiet,** *if the general is defeated (the general defeated), he will retreat.*

6. **Dōna missa recēpit,** *he received the gifts which had been sent (the gifts sent).*

7. **Caesar prīncipem captum Rōmam mīsit,** *Caesar took a chieftain and sent him (sent a taken chieftain) to Rome.*

8. **Gallia est dīvīsa,** *Gaul is divided.*

a. Observe that the present participle represents an action as *going on* at the time denoted by the main verb, as in 1 and 2.

b. The perfect participle represents an action as *completed* at the time denoted by the main verb, as in 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7.

c. Observe that what the Latin expresses by a participle is often best expressed in English (1) by a clause beginning with *while, though, because, if,* etc.; (2) by a relative clause ; (3) by a verb coördinate with one following.

d. Observe that a perfect participle used with **sum** may lose its idea of time and become virtually an adjective, as in 8.

354.   *Vocabulary.*

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mō-
    tus, *move, rouse, disturb.*
contrā, prep. w. acc., *against.*
Fabricius, -ī, m. *Fabricius.*
graviter [gravis], adv. *heavily,
    severely.*
historia, -ae, f. *history.*
inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,
    [faciō], *kill.*
īra, -ae, f. *anger.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [līber],
    set free, liberate.
medicus, -ī, m. *physician.*
Pyrrhus, -ī, m. *Pyrrhus.*
re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, ductus,
    lead back.
venēnum, -ī, n. *poison.*
vīcīnus, -a, -um, *neighboring.*
vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus,
    bind.

355. 1. Fabricius cōnsul factus contrā Pyrrhum, rē-gem quendam, missus est. 2. Accidit ut cōnsul ipse et Pyrrhus castra vīcīna habērent. 3. Fabricius timēns nē rēx impetum faceret castra mūnīvit. 4. Dē[1] nocte medi-cus Pyrrhī ad Fabricium vēnit. 5. " Ego," inquit, " sī mihi praemium dederis, dominum meum venēnō interfi-ciam." 6. " Tū, pessime,[2] " inquit Fabricius, " ad tuum dominum statim vinctus mittēris." 7. Tum medicum

---

[1] *In.*   [2] *Miscreant.* See **207.**

vinctum ad Pyrrhum rēgem redūcī iussit. 8. Sed Pyrrhus īrā commōtus[1] medicum nōn interfēcit. 9. Nōnne eum graviter pūnīvit? 10. Historia nōn nārrat medicum ā Pyrrhō pūnītum esse.

356. 1. The Gauls will attack the Romans while they are fortifying their camp. 2.[2] They led their forces out of the camp and drew them up. 3. In the plain many animals were found which had been killed. 4. Though moved by anger, we shall not fight. 5. Fabricius heard the physician, but ordered him to be bound. 6. If the physician is set free,[3] he will be glad. 7. The physician was very glad, because he was set free.

[1] See **353**, 3.   [2] See **353**, 7.   [3] See **353**, 5.
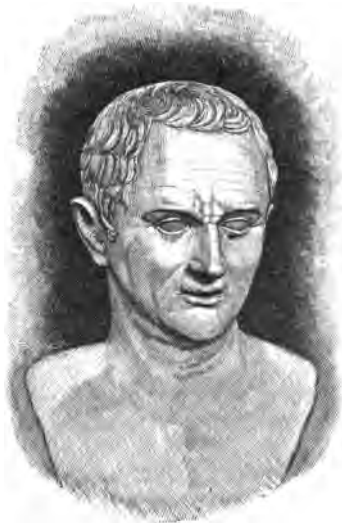
CICERO.

LESSON LVII.

Deponent Verbs.

357. Review the passive voice of the moods and tenses already studied of the model verbs.

358. Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. There are deponents of each of the regular conjugations, distinguished, like verbs in the active voice, by the present infinitive. The endings of the infinitive are as follows :

First conjugation . . -ārī	Third conjugation . . -ī
Second conjugation . -ērī	Fourth conjugation . -īrī

a. For the method of giving the principal parts of deponent verbs, see the next vocabulary.

359. Deponents are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, with two exceptions : (1) they substitute the future infinitive active for the passive, — **mīrātūrus esse** in place of **mīrātum īrī** ; (2) they have the participles of both voices :

mīrāns, *admiring.*	**mīrātus,** *having admired.*
mīrātūrus, *about to admire.*	**mīrandus,** *to be admired.*

a. It has been said (**351,** *a*) that there is no perfect active participle in Latin; but the perfect participle of deponent verbs is usually active in meaning.

360.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Ūtor meā pecūniā,** *I use my own money.*

2. **Catilīna nostrā patientiā abūtitur,** *Catiline abuses our patience.*

3. **Dux profectus cum equitātū urbe potītus est,** *the commander, having set out with cavalry, got possession of the city.*

4. **Lūce sōlis fruimur,** *we enjoy the light of the sun.*

a. A peculiarity of Latin syntax is illustrated in the above sentences. Certain verbs, which, from their meanings we should expect to be transitive, govern the ablative.

361. Rule. — **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds, govern the ablative.**

362.   *Vocabulary.*

ab-ūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus sum, *abuse.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, *perform.*

miror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *admire, wonder, wonder at.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *get possession of, get, gain.*

pro-ficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, *set out, march, go.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, employ.*

SEMI–DEPONENTS.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *dare.*

fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum [fīdus], *trust.*

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice, be glad.*

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *be wont, be accustomed.*

a. The last four verbs are called *semi-deponents*, because they have only passive forms (with active meanings) in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

363. 1. Abūsus est tuā patientiā. 2. Medicus venē-
nō nōn ūsus est. 3. Castrīs hostium potītī sumus.
4. Quis sōle et āere nōn fruitur? 5. Tuam vōcem
sequēmur. 6. Profectus est in Ītaliam. 7. Ausus est
in Ītaliam proficīscī.

364. 1. The children wonder at the flowers. 2. They
were wont to perform tasks. 3. We all rejoiced in that
victory.[1] 4. Having been set free, he rejoiced. 5. They
have dared nothing. 6. The general trusted in the valor
of his soldiers.

365. 1. Quīvīs[2] sermōne sapientium fruitur. 2. Frui-
mur lūce quae ā Deō nōbīs datur. 3. Puerī, bene et
fidēliter fūnctī estis vestrō pēnsō. 4. Nostrī secūtī hostīs
interfēcērunt māgnum numerum. 5. Aliquis ausus est
meīs librīs ūtī. 6. Tibi fisus tuum cōnsilium secūtus sum.
7. Imperātor victōriā mīlitum gāvīsus est. 8. Mīlitēs
itinera tribus diēbus longiōra facere solitī sunt. 9. Timē-
bam nē puer istīs librīs nōn cum cūrā ūterētur. 10. Lē-
niōre āere fruī solitī erāmus. 11. Putāvimus hostīs
nostrīs castrīs potītūrōs esse.

366. 1. The soldiers dared to follow, trusting in their
leader. 2. We see that you have followed bad advice,
and that you will be punished.[3] 3. Our men will get
possession of the mountain and the plain. 4. In the
camp were found three hundred hostages, whom the
victors set free. 5. The Romans wondered at the great
stature[4] of the Germans. 6. The army set out[5] for[6] the
territories of the Belgae, and made a march of ten days.

---

[1] See **132.**
[2] See **308,** *b.*
[3] Pūnītum īrī.

[4] *Size of body.*
[5] Express by a participle.
[6] Use in.

367. *Colloquium.*

PATER ET FILIOLUS.

P. Ades, mī fīliole, et mihi ostende libellum istum.
_{little book}

F. Eccum, cāre pater, sī libellum Latīnum vidēre cupis. _{here it is}

P. Quod pēnsum tibi hodiē imperāvit praeceptor?
_{impose} _{teacher}

F. Pēnsum dē verbīs dēpōnentibus quae ad coniugā-tiōnēs omnīs pertinent. _{deponent}
_{belong}

P. Quam ob rem sīc appellantur ista verba?
_{wherefore} _{so}

F. Quia fōrmam actīvam et sīgnificātiōnem passīvam
_{form} _{meaning}
plērumque dēposuērunt. Sīc nōs praeceptor docuit.
_{generally} _{lay aside} _{has taught}

P. Quod autem pēnsum in crāstinum diem imperāvit
_{but} _{for} _{to-morrow} _{has imposed}
praeceptor?

F. Ad haec addidit praeceptor alia multa. At tū, mī
_{has added} _{but}
pater, Latīnae linguae iam puer studēbās?
_{already}

P. Certē, fīliole, idque vehementer.
_{right hard}

F. Num ego, sī dīligenter studuerō, ērudītus ut tū
_{learn} _{learned} _{as}
erō?

P. Vix tam ērudītus. At iam tibi eundum est
_{now} _{must be going}
dormītum.
_{to bed}

LESSON LVIII.

Irregular Verbs volō, nōlō, mālō.

DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

PRINCIPAL
PARTS:
volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish, will.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nē, volō], *be unwilling, will not.*
mālō, mālle, māluī [magis, volō], *be more willing, prefer, would (should) rather.*

368. Learn the conjugation of volō, nōlō, mālō, omitting the perfect subjunctive (519).

---

369. 1. Vult venīre; dīcit sē velle venīre. 2. Nōlunt sequī; dīxērunt sē nōlle sequī. 3. Vīs discere; scīmus tē velle discere. 4. Voluimus scīre. 5. Nōluistī audīre. 6. Accidit ut vellet custōdīre. 7. Dīcitur[1] hōc dōnum māluisse. 8. Putantur voluisse. 9. Volēns aut nōlēns illud pēnsum faciet. 10. Māvult redūcī. 11. Nōn vultis īnstruī. 12. Nōlī[2] terrērī. 13. Nōlīte[2] circumvenīrī.

370. 1. Do not (*sing.*) fear. 2. Do not (*pl.*) wonder. 3. Do not punish. 4. You wish to be guarded. 5. You (*sing.*) are unwilling to be guarded. 6. He prefers to be set free. 7. He is unwilling to be bound. 8. It happens that he is unwilling to come. 9. We want to enjoy the light. 10. We prefer to perform the task.

[1] *He is said.*   [2] *Do not.*

371. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Iste liber mihi placet maximē,** *that book of yours pleases me very much.*

2. **Aliqui suis amicis nocent,** *some people injure their own friends.*

3. **Lēgibus pārēre dēbēmus,** *we ought to obey the laws.*

4. **Frātrī persuādet ut hōc faciat,** *he persuades his brother to do this.*

a. Observe that the verbs **placeō, noceō, pāreō,** and **persuādeō** are intransitive and govern the dative, while the English equivalents are transitive. The same is true of a number of other Latin verbs.

372. Rule. — *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, believe, trust, help, and their opposites, also to persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare, and the like, govern the dative.*

373. *Vocabulary.*

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus,
believe.

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus,
favor.

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus,
do harm to, injure.

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus,
spare.

per-suādeō, -ēre, -sī, -suāsus,
persuade.

placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus,
be pleasing to, please.

———

cor-rigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus
[**com, regō**], *correct.*

prō-gredior, -gredī, -gressus
sum [**gradior**], *go forward, advance, progress.*

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province.*

quod, conj. *because.*

374. 1. Cūr mihi persuādēre vultis ut in hortum veniam? 2. Tē in hortum venīre volumus ut fontēs

arborēsque videās.   3. Puer ūsus magistrī librīs nihil discēbat.   4. Sua[1] cuīque placent.   5. Istī fābulae crēdere nōn possum.   6. Aliōrum vitia vituperāre mālumus quam nostra corrigere.   7. Mīlitēs urbe potītī neque mulieribus neque līberīs pepercērunt.   8. Nōlī amīcōrum patientiā abūtī.   9. Et sibi et reī pūblicae nocēbit, sī longius[2] prōgrediētur.   10. Mīlitēs gāvīsī sunt quod urbe cum omnī praedā potītī erant.

375.   1. The whole province favored Pompey alone.[3]
2. We cannot follow the enemy without great peril.
3. That night was without a moon, so that we could not see.   4. Why are you unwilling to perform your tasks?
5. Why do you wish to injure me, your best friend?
6. The boy, though often warned, was not wont to correct his faults.   7. We wish to go forward to the end of the journey.   8. Any one you please would rather be loved than feared.

[1] *His own* (*things*).   [2] See **194,** *c.*   [3] See **291.**

TESTUDO.

LESSON LIX.

376. Reading Lesson.

ARS MEMORIAE.

Themistoclēs fuit vir ingenī māgnī. Ōlim ērudītus homō ad eum vēnit artemque memoriae eum docēre voluit. "Haec,[1] inquit, "ars facere potest ut omnia[2] memoriā[3] teneās.' Themistoclēs autem, "Magis," inquit, "mihi tū placēbis, sī mē oblīvīscī multa[2] docueris."

377. CERVA ET VITIS.

Ōlim cerva, quae celerrimē fugiēbat ut vēnātōrum ē manibus sē ēriperet, sub vītem sē condidit. Intereā vēnātōrēs sequentēs, longius prōgrediuntur. Cerva autem nōn iam timēns vēnātōrēs incipiēbat folia vītis carpere. Folia agitantur, quod vident vēnātōrēs et statim reveniunt. Mox sentiunt ibi bēstiam aliquam sub foliīs latēre et sagittīs cervam vulnerant. Brevī tempore misera bēstia vulneribus[4] moritur, sed moriēns dīcit, "Iūstās dō poenās, nam huīc vītī, quae mē tegēbat, nocēre nōn dēbuī.[5]

378. 1. Once upon a time a deer, fleeing swiftly, escaped from the hunters. 2. Hiding under a vine, she nibbled the leaves. 3. But the hunters, who had gone on too far, soon came back. 4. They saw the leaves shake,[6] and thought something was hiding there. 5. With their arrows they wounded the poor creature. 6. "My punishment is just," says she, while dying, "for by nibbling I hurt the vine which protected[7] me."

---

[1] With ars.

[2] How are omnia and multa used? [3] See **84**. [4] See **132**.

[5] *I ought not to have injured.*

[6] Passive infinitive.

[7] Express by participle of tegō.

379.　　　　　　*Vocabulary.*

autem, conj. (never the first word), *but, however.*

bēstia, -ae, f. *beast, creature.*

carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, *pluck, nibble.*

celeriter, adv. *swiftly.*

cerva, ae, f. *deer, hind.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach.*

dō (dare, etc.) poenās, *suffer punishment.*

ē-ripiō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptus [rapiō], *seize, snatch;* sē ēripere, *escape.*

iūstus, -a, -um, *just.*

lateō, -ēre, latuī ――, *lurk, lie hid.*

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*

oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, *forget.*

re-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, ――, *come back, return.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl., *up to, under.*

vēnātor, -ōris, m. *hunter.*

vītis, -is, f. (vīti-), *vine.*

――――――

LESSON LX.

Clauses introduced by cum, *when.*

380. Learn the pluperfect subjunctive of sum, and of the model verbs in the active and passive.

381.　　　　　*Model Sentences.*

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, Aeduī Rōmānīs amīcī erant,** *when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aeduans were friendly to the Romans.*

2. **Id nōs faciēmus, cum tū domum vēneris,** *we shall do this when you come (shall have come) home.*

3. **Cum frūmentī cōpia in agrīs esset, exercitus profectus est,** *when there was an abundance of grain in the fields, the army set out.*

4. **Dux, cum castra mūnīta essent, ad hostīs properāvit,** *when the camp had been fortified, the commander hastened against the enemy.*

a. Observe the mood and tenses in 1 and 2, in the **cum**-clause ; then the same in 3 and 4.

382. Rule. — *In a* **cum-***clause expressing time, the verb is commonly in the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, in the indicative.*

383. *Vocabulary.*

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go from, go away, go off* (520).

ali-quandō, adv. [**alius**], *at some time, once.* [*maid.*

ancilla, -ae, f. *maid-servant.*

captīvus, -ī, m. *captive.*

ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, exclaim.*

hīc, adv. *here, hereupon.*

im-pudēns, -entis [**in,** *not,* **pudēns,** *modest*], *bold, brazen, impudent.*

iūssū, m. (only abl.), *by order.*

mūnus, -eris, n. *duty, office.*

post, prep. with acc., *after, behind;* as adv., *afterwards.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *ask for, inquire.*

re-spondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus, *answer, reply, respond.*

384. 1. Cum iūssī essent dīcere, ūnus incēpit. 2. Mīlitēs, cum oppidum cēpērunt, omnīs incolās interfēcērunt. 3. Mīlitēs, cum oppidum cēpissent, omnīs incolās interfēcērunt. 4. Cum eī fābulam nārrārem, subitō rīdēbat. 5. Imperātor nūntiō duce[1] ūsus exercitum per silvās dūxit. 6. Captīvus, cum iūssū imperātōris nōmen quaererētur, nihil respondit. 7. Victōrī nōmen captīvī quaerentī, nihil est respōnsum.

385. NASICA ET ENNIUS.

Nāsīca aliquandō ad poētam[2] Ennium vēnit et eum quaesīvit. Eī[3] quaerentī ancilla respondit Ennium domī nōn esse. Nāsīca sēnsit illam[4] dominī iūssū hōc dīxisse

---

[1] *As guide.*

[2] *That is, to the house of the poet.*

[3] *To him,* i.e., *Nasica.*

[4] *That she.* See **245,** *a.*

et Ennium domī esse. Paucīs post diēbus, cum **ad Nāsī**cam vēnisset Ennius et eum quaereret, exclāmat **Nāsīca**
sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid? **ego nōn**
cōgnōscō," inquit, "vōcem tuam?" Hīc Nāsīca: "**Homō**
es impudēns. Ego, cum tē quaererem, ancillae [1] tuae
dīcentī tē domī nōn esse crēdidī; tū mihi ipsī nōn
crēdis?"

386. 1. When Nasica came to Ennius, the latter [2] did
not wish to see him. 2. Therefore, Ennius wished the
maid to say that he was not at home, when Nasica should
ask [3] for him.[4] 3. He did not fear that Nasica would not
believe the maid. 4. Did the maid perform her duty in [5]
obeying her master? 5. When Nasica had asked for
his friend, the poet, he went away.[6] 6. He went away
wondering.

[1] Depends on **crēdidī (372)**,
and has **dīcentī** in agreement
with it.

[2] See **100,** *e.*

[3] Plup. subjunctive.

[4] **Sē,** not **eum.**   [5] Omit.

[6] **abiit.**

CALCEI.

LESSON LXI.

Ablative Absolute.

387. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Ventō fa-** { *the wind favoring,* } *the ship came*
vente, nāvis in por- { *when the wind favored,* } *into port.*
tum vēnit, { *with a favoring wind,* }

2. **Cōnsul, pāce** { *peace having been made,* }
factā, Rōmam vē- { *when* (or *after*) *peace* }
nit, { *had been made,* } *the consul came*
{ *because peace had been* } *to Rome.*
{ *made,* }
{ *having made peace,* }

3. **Tē duce hos-** { *you* (*being*) *leader,* }
tis vincēmus, { *since you are our leader,* }
{ *if you are our leader,* } *we shall defeat*
{ *under your leadership,* } *the enemy.*
{ *with you for a leader,* }

4. **Augustus,** { *Cicero* (*being*) *consul,* } *Augustus was*
Cicerōne cōnsule, { *when C. was consul,* } *born.*
nātus est, { *in the consulship of C.,* }

a. Observe that in 1 and 2 a noun and a participle are put in the ablative to express the time, cause, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb. In 3 and 4 the participle is wanting, as the verb **sum** has no present participle. In 3 a noun and a pronoun are used; in 4, two nouns. An adjective and a noun may be used in the same way.

b. Observe that the noun or pronoun in the ablative is never the same as the subject or object of the main verb. The words in the ablative are cut off grammatically from the rest of the sentence, hence this ablative is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

388. Rule. — *The ablative absolute is used to express the time, cause, condition, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb.*

c. Observe the various renderings of the ablative absolute. The literal translation is given first in each case, but this ought seldom or never to be done in rendering Latin into English, except to show that the construction is understood.

d. In the second sentence notice the difference between the Latin and English idioms. We may say, *the consul, having made peace, came to Rome;* but the Latin has no perfect participle corresponding to *having made*, therefore, the perfect *passive* participle must be used in the ablative with **pāce.** The same idea might be expressed by a clause with **cum.**

e. From the nature of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning), it will be seen that the English perfect active participle *(having made,* etc.) can be directly expressed in Latin, only when there is a deponent verb of the right meaning : *Caesar having set out,* **Caesar profectus.**

389. *Vocabulary.*

ā-gnōscō,-ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [ad], *recognize.*

ante, prep. w. acc., *before.*

Catō, -ōnis, m. *Cato.*

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum [com], *exhort, urge, encourage.*

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *accomplish, finish.*

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *await, wait for, expect.*

Germānus, -ī, m. *a German,*

glōria, -ae, f. *glory, fame, renown.*

Marius, -ī, m. *Marius.*

oc-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ob, caedō, *cut*], *slay, kill.*

signum, -ī, n. *sign, signal, standard.*

390. 1. Hannibal, montibus superātīs,[1] in Italiam vēnit. 2. Hannibal, vīsō frātris occīsī capite, "Āgnōscō,"

[1] *Having passed over.*

inquit, "fortūnam Carthāginis." 3. Equitēs, equīs incitā-
tīs, impetum fēcērunt. 4. Caesar mīlitēs paucīs vōcibus
cohortātus, sīgnum proelī dedit. 5. Labiēnus, monte
occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat. 6. Labiēnus, cum montem
occupāvisset, nostrōs exspectābat. 7. Catōne mortuō,
nūlla iam[1] fuit rēs pūblica. 8. Hōc oppidum, paucīs
dēfendentibus,[2] Caesar expūgnāre nōn potuit. 9. Belgae
māgnā in bellō glōriā[3] potītī putābant sē fēlīciter dīmicā-
tūrōs. 10. Cōnsiliīs eōrum cōgnitīs Caesar castra mōvit,
et māgnō[4] itinere factō eōs fugāvit.

391. 1. We shall be victors under the leadership of
Caesar. 2. Caesar was wont to encourage his men
before a battle in a few words. 3. After hostages had
been given, peace was made with the Gauls. 4. Since
the war was finished, Caesar returned into Hither Gaul.
5. In the consulship of Marius the Germans were
defeated in a great battle. 6. When Marius[5] had been
made consul, he defeated the Germans in a great battle.
7. The brave soldier, having performed[6] his duty, did
not fear blame.

[1] Nūlla iam = *no longer any.*
[2] Translate *though*, etc.
[3] See **361.**   [4] *Forced.*

[5] Latin order : *Marius, when he,* etc.
[6] Why not in the ablative?

PHARETRA CUM SAGITTIS.

LESSON LXII.

392. **Reading Lesson.**

GALLIA PACATA.

Omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī fāma ad barbarōs perlāta est ut ab Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrōs pollicēbantur, nam timēbant nē Caesar suam terram vāstāret. Quōs lēgātōs Caesar, quod[1] in Ītaliaṃ properābat, initā proximā aestāte[2] ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse, legiōnibus in hīberna ductīs, in Ītaliam profectus est. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs[3] Caesaris supplicātiō diēs quīndecim dēcrēta est, quod[4] ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

393. 1. So great was Caesar's last victory that after the battle had been fought[5] all the Gauls gave hostages. 2. After Further Gaul was subdued, Caesar set out for Hither Gaul, and the army returned to winter quarters. 3. When summer had begun,[6] the deputies returned to Caesar. 4. "Have you," said he, "done those things which I ordered?" 5. They replied that they had obeyed all his orders. 6. So great was the joy at Rome on account of Caesar's victories that a thanksgiving was decreed.

---

[1] Not the relative.

[2] *The next summer having begun = at the beginning of the next summer;* marks the time of reverti.

[3] *On account of the despatches.*

[4] The relative is neuter, because it refers to a clause.

[5] Use a form of **faciō**.

[6] Express in two ways.

394. *Vocabulary.*

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *decide, determine, decree.*

hīberna, -ōrum, n. (pl.) [hiems], *winter quarters* (castra understood).

imperātum, -ī, n. [imperō, *command*], *order, command.*

in-colō, -ere, -coluī, —— [incola], *dwell; inhabit.*

in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go in, begin* (520).

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pāx], *make quiet, subdue.*

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *spread abroad* (521).

polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, *promise.*

re-vertor, -ī, revertī, reversus (deponent in pres., impf. and fut.), *turn back, return.*

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f. *thanksgiving.*

———◆◆◆———

LESSON LXIII.

Compounds of Sum.

395. Possum has been already treated in LESSON XLVII. The other compounds of **sum** are inflected like **sum**, except **prōsum**. **Prōsum** is compounded of **prōd** (old form of **prō,** *for*) and **sum**. The **d** of **prōd** is retained before **e.** See **517, 518.**

396. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Ipse dux suīs mīlitibus aderat,** *the general himself helped his soldiers.*

2. **Quis equitātuī praefuit ?** *who was in command of the cavalry ?*

3. **Caesar decimae legiōnis peditēs equīs imposuit,** *Caesar mounted the foot-soldiers of the tenth legion on horses.*

a. Observe in the model sentences illustrations of a common use of the dative. Many verbs compounded with certain prepositions are intransitive in Latin, and govern the dative. The corresponding English verbs are often transitive.

397. Rule. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super, govern the dative.*

a. All the compounds of **sum**, except **absum** and **possum**, govern the dative.

b. The dative governed by these verbs does not depend upon the preposition in the compound, but is the indirect object of the compound verb.

398. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Mīlitēs ibi erant praesidiō,** *the soldiers were there as a defence (for a defence).*

2. **Cui bonō est?** *whose advantage is it? (to whom is it for an advantage?).*

3. **Hunc librum magister mihi praemiō dedit,** *this book the master gave me as a reward (for a reward).*

a. Observe that the datives **praesidiō, bonō** (used as a noun), and **praemiō** indicate the *end* or *purpose*, that for which something *serves*. Hence this dative is called the DATIVE OF SERVICE.

399. Rule. — *The dative is used with* **sum** *and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves.*

a. This dative may be accompanied by another dative, as in 2 (**cui**), and 3 (**mihi**), of the person or thing affected, the ordinary indirect object (**28**).

400. *Vocabulary.*

Athēniēnsis, -is, m. (Athē-
niēnsi-) [Athēnae], *an
Athenian.*

auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], *help,
aid;* plu. *auxiliaries.*

īn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, inlātus
(ill-), *bring upon, cause;*

bellum īnferre, *make war
upon,* with dat. (521).

mōs, -ōris, m. *custom, manner.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through.*

praesidium, -ī, n. *protection,
defence.*

schola, -ae, f. *school.*

<center>COMPOUNDS OF sum.</center>

ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus,
be away, be absent, with ā
or ab and abl.

dē-sum, ·esse, -fuī, -futūrus,
*be from, be wanting, lack,
fail.*

in-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be in,
be among.*

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus,
be among, be present.

ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be
against, injure, hinder.*

prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be
before, be at the head of,
command.*

prō-sum, prōdesse, -fuī, -fu-
tūrus, *be for, be useful to,
benefit.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be
over, be left over, survive.*

---

401. 1. Pater timet nē quid[1] malī fīliō accidat.
2. Barbarī populō Rōmānō bellum īnferēbant. 3. Nōn
scholae[2] sed vītae discimus. 4. Iste liber, quem tū
mihi proficīscentī dedistī, per tōtum iter fuit mihi vo-
luptātī. 5. Quis praefuit equitātuī quem Aeduī Caesarī
auxiliō mīserant? 6. Labiēnus, hōc locō occupātō,
māgnum hostibus terrōrem intulit. 7. Paucī Graecōrum
Athēniēnsibus māgnō in perīculō vēnērunt auxiliō.

402. De Amicitia.

In vērā amīcitiā māgnum inest praesidium. Amīcus
vērus adest amīcō neque deerit in perīculō. Amīcō prō-

---

[1] See **312**, note 6. [2] *For school.*

desse dulce est, amīcō deesse turpe.   Amīcus fīdus nōn
aberit ab amīcō in malā fōrtūnā.·   Mōrēs malī amīcitiae
obsunt.   Inter hominēs malōs vēra amīcitia nōn interest.
Cicerō cōnsul, cum reī pūblicae praeesset, amīcīs multum
prōfuit.   Multae epistulae Cicerōnis et ēius amīcōrum
supersunt.   Prōdeste amīcīs.   Amīcīs este in perīculō
praesidiō.

403. 1. In Hannibal there was great foresight and
bravery.   2. He was long absent from his own country,
making war upon the Romans.   3. He commanded
armies in Spain and Italy.   4. He was present at many
battles, and was a terror[1] to the Romans.   5. He bene-
fited his country in many ways.[2]   6. But his enemies in
his own land injured him.   7. Scipio defeated him in
battle in Africa.   8. He survived this battle many years.
9.[3] His name will never lack renown.

[1] *For a terror.*   [3] Turn the sentence round:
[2] *Things.*   See **168.**   *renown will never be wanting.*

Currus.

LESSON LXIV.

The Irregular Verb eō, *go.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : eō, īre, īvī (iī), itūrus.

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE. — ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

404. Learn the conjugation of eō, except the perfect subjunctive, the gerund, and supine. (520.)

a. The root is i; observe where it is changed to e in the present indicative and subjunctive, and in the present participle.

405. The following prepositions, which take the ablative, have been used in preceding exercises :

ā (ab), *away, from; by.*   ē (ex), *out of, from.*

cum, *with.*   prō, *before, for.*

dē, *from, concerning.*   sine, *without.*

a. These are the common prepositions that take the ablative. Most other prepositions take the accusative ; but in and sub are sometimes followed by the ablative, sometimes by the accusative.

b. In after verbs expressing *motion* has the meanings *into, to, towards, for, against,* and takes the accusative.

c. In after verbs expressing *rest* has the meanings, *in, on, at,* and takes the ablative.

d. Sub, *under, up to,* after verbs expressing motion, takes the accusative ; after verbs expressing rest, takes the ablative.

406. 　　　　　　*Models.*

1. {	**in oppidō,** *in the town.* **in Italiā,** *in Italy.*	**Athēnis,** *at* or *in Athens.* **Arpīnī,** *at* or *in Arpinum.* **Carthāgini,** *at* or *in Carthage.* **Rōmae,** *at* or *in Rome.*
2. {	**ad flūmen,** *to the river.* **in urbem,** *into the town.* **in Italiam,** *to* or *into* 　*Italy.*	**Athēnās,** *to Athens.* **Rōmam,** *to Rome.*
3. {	**ex agrīs,** *from the fields.* **ex Italiā,** *from Italy.*	**Athēnis,** *from Athens.* **Rōmā,** *from Rome.*

a. All the above ways of expressing place have been illustrated in preceding lessons, and are familiar to the learner, except the last (**Athēnīs, Rōmā**). Observe that in the first column a preposition is used in every expression of place, while in the second column (names of towns only) no preposition is used.

b. Again, observe in the first column how (1) place *where* is expressed, (2) place *whither*, (3) place *whence*, and compare, group by group, with the second column.

407. Rule for names of towns:

1. *Place* ***where*** *is expressed by the locative.*

2. *Place* ***whither*** *is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.*

3. *Place* ***whence*** *is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

a. **Domus,** *home*, and **rūs,** *the country*, have the construction of names of towns. So also names of small islands.

408.   *Paradigm.*

domī, *at home.*

domum, *(to) home.*

domō, *from home.*

rūrī, *in the country.*

rūs, *to, into the country.*

rūre, *from the country.*

409.   *Vocabulary.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. (Alpī-), *the Alps.*

arceō, -ēre, -cuī, ——, *keep off.*

avārus, -a, -um, *greedy, rapacious, avaricious.*

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *lack, be in want of.*

dē-fēnsor, -ōris, m. *defender.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go out.*

in-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go in, enter on.*

mēnsis, -is, m. (mēnsi-), *month.*

nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *be born.*

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus [re-], *go back, return.*

rēgnum, -ī, n. *kingdom, throne.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deprive, rob, despoil.*

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go over, cross.*

vacuus, -a, -um, *destitute of.*

---

410. 1. Voluērunt īre Corinthum. 2. Nōlunt exīre Athēnīs. 3. Māvult redīre Carthāginem. 4. In urbem ībunt. 5. Eunt Corinthō. 6. It ex urbe. 7. Iērunt domum. 8. Dīxērunt sē domum itūrōs. 9. Redeunt rūs. 10. Dīcit mē rūs itūrum. 11. Timet ut eant domum.

411. 1. We shall go to Rome. 2. They will return from Gaul. 3. He crossed. 4. He says he crossed. 5. They enter. 6. He entered. 7. We are unwilling to enter. 8. Don't return to the city. 9. Remain at Carthage. 10. You were returning from the country. 11. They fear that he will return to the country.

412.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Hōc mē līberā periculō,** *free me from this danger.*
2. **Hīc homō cibō caret,** *this man is in want of food.*
3. **Germānī Rōmānōs ā fīnibus suīs arcēbant,** *the Germans kept the Romans off from their lands.*

a. Observe the use of the ablative to denote that from which there is freedom, removal, or separation, or that which is lacking. The ablative so used answers the question *from what? of what?* and is called the ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. The ablative of place *whence*, with or without a preposition, is an ablative of separation.

413. Rule. — *Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.*

---

414. 1. Lēgātī Rōmā mīssī Carthāginem iērunt. 2. Hunc ille deus ā suīs ārīs arcēbit. 3. Cum Miltiadēs īnsulam quandam nōn posset expūgnāre, rediit Athēnās. 4. Alexander, patre mortuō, rēgnum iniit. 5. Istā cūrā līberātus gaudēbō omnibus cum cīvibus. 6. Alpēs ante Hannibalem cum exercitū trānsiit nēmō. 7. Urbs dēfēnsōribus vacua fuit. 8. Avārī mīlitēs ārās spoliāvērunt dōnīs. 9. Helvētiī ē suīs fīnibus exīre voluērunt. 10. Duōbus itineribus domō exīre poterant.

415. 1. We removed from the city into the country. 2. When we had remained two months in the country we returned home. 3. The goddess will keep the Romans from her temple. 4. My boy, that horse lacks grain and water. 5. Cicero was born at Arpinum, in Italy.

6. From Arpinum he removed to Rome, in which city he was educated. 7. Caesar says that he will go with the tenth legion alone. 8. My friend lacked money.

416. *Colloquium.*

TITYRUS ET MELIBOEUS.

T. Aliquis iānuam pulsat. Ī, puer, aperī iānuam.
door knock

[*Meliboeus trīstī vultū passibus tardīs introit.*]
steps slow enter

Salvē, amīce, diū mē nōn adīstī. Cūr iste tuus vultus
how do you do have visited
tristis?

M. Ēheu! mī Tītyre, abeō ē meā patriā.
go away

T. Cūr abīs? Quō abībis? Nōlī relinquere haec arva
dulcia. fields
pleasant.

M. Quid tibi vīs? Meōs agrōs mīlitibus impiīs dōnāvit
what would you have me do wicked has given
Octāviānus. Māgna pars gregum interiit. Ipse periī.
flocks have perished. am undone

T. Minimē, amīce; adī ad Octāviānum; ille est benīg-
nus, neque vult tē perīre. Tū agrōs recipiēs.
to be ruined

M. Parvae spēs mihi sunt redeundī; tamen ībō, ut tū
of returning
monēs; Octāviānō ad pedēs mē prōiciam.
will throw

T. Et redībis in agrōs tuōs; redibit pāx aurea. Valē,
mī Meliboee, es bonō animō.
be of good courage

M. Et tū valē, bone Tītyre.

LESSON LXV.

Sequence of Tenses. — Indirect Questions.

417. Learn the perfect subjunctive of the model **and** irregular verbs, except **ferō** and **fīō.**

418.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Audiō ubi sit — ubi fuerit,** *I hear where he is — where he has been,* or *was.*

2. **Audiam ubi sit — ubi fuerit,** *I shall hear where he is — where he has been,* or *was.*

3. **Audīverō ubi sit — ubi fuerit,** *I shall have heard where he is — where he has been,* or *was.*

4. **Audiēbam ubi esset — ubi fuisset,** *I was hearing where he was — where he had been.*

5. **Audīvī ubi esset — ubi fuisset,** *I heard where he was — where he had been.*

6. **Audīveram ubi esset — ubi fuisset,** *I had heard where he was — where he had been.*

a. The tenses of the indicative mood are grouped in two classes. (1) Those of the first group above, the present, future, and future perfect, are called *primary tenses.* (2) Those of the second group, the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect, are called *secondary tenses.* Observe now the tenses of the subjunctive: in the first group the present and perfect; in the second group the imperfect and pluperfect.

419. Rule. — *A primary tense in the main clause is followed by the present or perfect subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a secondary tense by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

a. The principle of the sequence of tenses has been already partially illustrated in preceding lessons.

420. *Model Sentences.*

DIRECT QUESTIONS.	INDIRECT QUESTIONS.
1. **Quis es?** *who are you?*	**Sciō quis sīs,** *I know who you are.*
2. **Ubi erāmus?** *where were we?*	**Sciēbam ubi essēmus,** *I knew where we were.*
3. **Cūr profectus est?** *why did he set out?*	**Quaesiērunt cūr profectus esset,** *they asked why he had set out.*
4. **Quem vīdistī?** *whom have you seen?*	**Sciō quem vīderis,** *I know whom you have seen.*

a. Compare each of the sentences in the left-hand column with the corresponding one on the right. Observe that each dependent clause in the right-hand column begins with an interrogative word, and contains the substance of a question, though not a question in form. Such dependent clauses are called Indirect Questions. Observe the mood and how it is translated.

421. Rule. — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

a. The commonest interrogative words introducing indirect questions are **quis,** *who?* **cūr,** *why?* **num,** *whether?* **ubi,** *where?* **quō,** *whither?* **unde,** *whence?* **quot,** *how many?*

b. **Num** in a direct question expects the answer *no*, as **nōnne** expects the answer *yes*. It must commonly be left untranslated: **num manibus ambulās?** *do you walk on your hands?* or, *you don't walk on your hands, do you?* In an indirect question **num** means *whether*, without definite expectation.

422. *Vocabulary.*

cachinnō, -āre, ——, ——,
   laugh out loud.
dolor, -ōris, m. *pain, grief.*
Inferī, -ōrum, m. (pl. of In-
   ferus), *inhabitants of the
   lower world.*

inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
   ask, inquire, question.
num, adv., *whether.* **421,** *b.*
quot, indecl. *how many?*
stultus, -a, -um, *foolish.*
tot, indecl. *so many.*

    unde, adv. *whence, where from.*

interrogō, *ask a question, inquire,* and nearly limited to that
   sense ; followed by the accusative of the person.
quaerō, *ask a question, ask for;* also, *seek to gain, seek to
   know, search into;* followed by the ablative of the person
   with ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).

---

423. 1. Unde veniēbant tot mīlitēs? 2. Amīcus ā
mē quaesīvit unde venīrent tot mīlitēs. 3. Ille puer
parentibus nōn voluptātī,[1] sed semper erit dolōrī. 4. Dīc
mihi num Alexander ā proeliīs semper abierit victor.
5. Flūmen ab urbe abest octō mīlia passuum. 6. Quot
cīvitātēs sunt in armīs? 7. Caesar quaesīvit quot cīvi-
tātēs essent in armīs. 8. Magister interrogāvit quis
esset īnferōrum deus. 9. Hīc[2] quīdam puer stultissimus
cachinnābat. 10. Labiēnus mīlitēs cohortātus prōgressus
est ut vidēret quō in locō barbarī flūmen trānsīrent.
11. Equitātus Caesarī auxiliō missus, bellō cōnfectō,
domum revertit. 12. Num templa spoliāsse prōfuit
prīncipibus avārīs quī exercituī praefuērunt?

424. 1. Tell me what you have in your right hand.
2. Nasica asked a man whether he had been accustomed
to walk on his hands. 3. Do you know why he thus
questioned him? 4. Because his hands were like horn.

---

     [1] See **399.**   [2] *Hereupon.*

5. We know why he is laughing aloud, why he has been wanting. 6. Do you not wonder why we have been praised? 7. They wondered whether he had been admonished. 8. Caesar asks the captives how many of the enemy there are.

LESSON LXVI.

The Irregular Verbs fero and fīō.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: { ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, carry, endure.*
{ fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made, become.*

425. Learn the conjugation of ferō and fīō, omitting the gerund and supine (521, 520).

a. Observe in the compounds of ferō, as they occur, the change that many prepositions undergo: ab + ferō becomes auferō; ex + ferō, becomes efferō, etc.

b. Fīō is the passive of faciō. The i is long, except in fit, and when followed by er.

426.   *Vocabulary.*

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,
    lead off, abduct.

ad-ferō (aff-), -ferre, attulī
    (adt), adlātus (all-), *bear
    to, bring.*

apud, prep. w. acc., *with,
    among.*

au-ferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablā-
    tus [ab(s)], *bear off, carry
    away.*

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], *a fall-
    ing, chance, misfortune,
    loss.*

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, conlātūs
    (coll-), [com] *bring together,
    collect.*

ef-ferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus
    [ex], *bear out, carry forth.*

ferōx, -ōcis, *fierce, savage.*

labor, -ōris, m. *labor, toil.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change.*

patienter, adv. *patiently.*

Plūtō, -ōnis, m. *Pluto, god of
    the lower world.*

Prōserpina, -ae, f. *Proserpine,
    daughter of Ceres.*

427. 1. Fert, ferunt.   2. Fit, fiunt.   3. Ferre, fierī.
4. Auferet, auferētur.   5. Contulerant, conlātī erant.
6. Abstulī, abstulērunt.   7. Fīmus, fiet.   8. Tulisse,
factus esse.   9. Efferunt, ēlātī sunt.   10. Dīcunt sē
auxilium adlātūrōs esse.   11. Hae puellae fiunt dīli-
gentiōrēs illīs puerīs.   12. Eīs labor fīet voluptātī.

428. 1. They become consuls.   2. They are bearing
arms.   3. He will carry away money.   4. He says he
has carried away money.   5. We have brought together
corn.   6. Bring shields for defense.   7. Take care[1] to
become good.   8. He took care to become good.

429. 1. Ferte patienter labōrēs.   2. Ferte patienter
quae mūtārī nōn possunt.   3. Nōlite cupere id quod fierī
nōn potest.   4. Nēmō nāscitur sapiēns, nēmō cāsū *fit*
bonus.   5. Cum imperātor auxilium mīlitibus dēfessīs
attulit, omnēs gāvīsī sunt.   6. Auxiliō ab imperātōre
mīlitibus dēfessīs adlātō, omnēs gaudēbant.   7. Frū-
mentō in ūnum locum conlātō ūsus est Caesar.   8. Apud
veterēs Rōmānōs ex agricolīs fīēbant cōnsulēs.   9. " Be-
nīgnum rēgem," inquit deus, "nōn tulistis, nunc ferōcem
ferte."   10. Interrogāvit quot ex cīvibus factī essent mīlitēs
et num multī proeliō interessent et superessent.

430. 1. We shall learn to bear our good fortune
well.   2. They bore with patience that which they could
not change.   3. The inhabitants carried their all[2] with
them out of the town.   4. The soldiers carried away all
the booty from the captured town.   5. Who will[3] cross
yonder river with me?   6. He asks who will cross yonder

---

[1] **Fac ut.**   See **312**, note 8.   [2] **Omnia sua.**   [3] *Is willing.*

river with him? 7. Tell me why Pluto led off Proserpine. 8. He led her off that she might become his wife. 9. I know not where[1] so many birds come from.[1] 10. Keep them off from my vines, so that they may not do harm.

431. *Colloquium.*

SOCRATES ET RHADAMANTHUS.

R. Tū, nisi fallor, es Sōcratēs, ille Athēniēnsis.
<small>unless I am mistaken</small>

S. Rēctē dīcis. Ego sum Sōcratēs, fīlius, ut ferunt, Sōphroniscī.
<small>as say</small>

R. Cūr dīcis *ut ferunt?* Nōnne rē vērā es fīlius illīus?
<small>in truth</small>

S. Ipse quidem nesciō, Ō Rhadamanthe, cūius sim fīlius.
<small>indeed not know am</small>

R. Num mē lūdis, Sōcratēs? Cavētō. Nōnne tē sapientem dīxit ōrāculum?
<small>mock beware</small>
<small>oracle</small>

S. Ita est; sed quā rē nōn intellegō, nisi quia mē ipse inscium perspiciō.
<small>yes understand</small>
<small>ignorant see plainly</small>

R. Quō modo aetātem dēgistī?
<small>how pass</small>

S. Māgnā ex parte loquēbar māximēque dē virtūte quaerēbam.
<small>for the most part I used to talk especially</small>
<small>inquired.</small>

R. Mihi dē virtūte explicātō, Sōcratēs; per brěve tempus tibi aurēs praebēbō.

S. Ēheu! Rhadamanthe, istīus reī sum inscius, nam mihi explicāre poterat nēmō.
<small>alas</small>
<small>was able no one</small>

---

[1] *Where . . . from* = **unde.**

R. Minimē sapiēns, Sōcratēs, tū mihi vidēris.   At
quid hōc locō tibi est in animō facere?   seem   but

S. Ante omnia, sī vidēbitur, cum Homērō velim   et
seem good   I should like
Ulixe et aliīs clārissimīs Graeciae prīncipibus loquī.
to talk.

R. Apage igitur ad istās mānēs.
be off   then   shades

LESSON LXVII.

The Subjunctive in Relative Clauses.

Cum Causal and Concessive.

432.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Gallī lēgātōs mīsērunt quī pācem peterent,** *the Gauls
sent deputies to sue for (who should sue for) peace.*

2. **Quis est tam ineptus quī hōc crēdat ?** *who is so silly
as to believe (who believes) this ?*

3. **Nihil est quod tē dēlectāre possit,** *there is nothing
that can delight you.*

4. **Ō quanta vīs vēritātis, quae sē dēfendat !** *O how great
the power of truth since it (which) defends itself !*

a. Observe in 1 and 2 that the relative clause has precisely
the same meaning as if **ut** were used in place of **quī.**   In 1 the
clause is one of *purpose*, in 2, of *result*.

b. Observe in 3 that the relative clause *characterizes* the
antecedent.   In such cases the antecedent is usually *indefinite*
or *general.*

c. Observe in 4 that the relative clause denotes *cause* or
reason, **quae** being equivalent to **cum ea.**

433. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses of purpose, result, characteristic, and cause.*

434. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Cum amīcī adsint, gaudēmus,** *since our friends are here, we rejoice.*

2. **Cum fortiter pūgnārent, tamen nōn vīcērunt,** *though they fought bravely, still they did not conquer.*

a. Notice these two uses of cum. In 1 it denotes *cause* or *reason* (*as, since*), in 2, *concession* (*though, although*).

435. Rule. — *The subjunctive is used with* **cum** *causal or* **concessive.**

436. *Vocabulary.*

ac-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, causa], *blame, accuse.*

ad-eō, adv. *to that degree, so.*

arduus, -a, -um, *steep; difficult, arduous.*

cōn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, gain, reach.*

cum, conj. *when, while; as, since; though, although.*

currus, -ūs, m. *chariot, wagon.*

ex-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [causa], *excuse.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste.*

ī-gnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in, not (g)nō(scō)], *know not, be ignorant.*

mors, mortis, f. (morti-) [morior], *death.*

per-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *allow, permit.*

petō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *seek, ask, sue for.*

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [causa], *decline, refuse.*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [sub, teneō], *hold up, sustain, withstand.*

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, *carry, draw.* Pass. *ride.*

---

437. 1. Mārcus erat prūdēns, quī vīnum nōn gustāret.

2. Cum īgnōrem quis sit ille homō, eī nōn permittam ut

mēcum in eōdem currū vehātur.   3. **Magister puerum** graviter accūsāvit quī pēnsō nōn fungerētur.   4. **Quae cum ita sint,**[1] supplicātiō dēcernētur.   5. Neque repertus est quisquam eōrum quī[2] mori prō prīncipe recūsāret. 6. Nōn is[3] sum quī[2] mortis perīculō terrear.   7. Caesar, aciē īnstrūctā, equitātum mīsit quī hostium impetum sustinēret.   8. Nihil est nōbīs adeō arduum quod nōn virtūte cōnsequī possīmus.   9. Cum ea ita sint, tamen[4] vōbīscum pācem faciam.   10. Lēgātī ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis[5] cōnsiliō[6] excūsārent. 11. Ennius erat impudēns quī sē nōn esse domī dīceret.

Several of the following sentences may be translated in two ways.

438. 1. No one is so wise that he knows all things. 2. Who can be found who does not enjoy the light of the sun?   3. Since I cannot persuade you[7] to go,[8] I will go myself.   4. The soldier was vehemently accused because he would not fight.   5. A thanksgiving was decreed for Caesar because he had waged war successfully in Gaul. 6. Although this is so, still we do not fear that you will taste the wine.   7. You are not the person[9] to abuse the patience of your friends.   8. There were some[10] who thought that Caesar was in Italy.

---

[1] **Quae cum ita sint,** *since this* (*these things*) *is so.*

[2] The antecedent implies some word like *such, such as to.*

[3] *The person.*

[4] **Tamen** indicates the meaning of **cum.**

[5] *On a former occasion.*

[6] *Conduct.*

[7] See **372.**

[8] **Ut** with subjunctive.

[9] Cf. **437,** 6.

[10] Omit.

LESSON LXVIII.

The Subjunctive in Wishes and Appeals.

439. Learn the future imperative of the model and irregular verbs.

440. *Model Sentences.*

WISHES.

1. (Utinam·) pater mox adsit,
- *may father be here (come) soon!*
- *I hope father may be here (come) soon!*
- *oh, that father may be here (come) soon!*

2. Utinam pater nunc adesset,
- *would that father were here now!*
- *I wish father were here now!*
- *oh, that father were here now!*

3. Utinam pater heri adfuisset,
- *would that father had been here yesterday!*
- *I wish father had been here yesterday!*
- *oh, that father had been here yesterday!*

441. Rule. — *Wishes are expressed by the sub-junctive with or without* utinam, *oh that!*

a. Utinam is often omitted with the present, rarely with other tenses. The negative in wishes is nē, not nōn.

b. Observe the tenses in the model sentences. In which one does the tense indicate that the wish may be realized?

442. Rule. — 1. *Wishes referring to the future, immediate or more remote, are expressed by the present subjunctive.*

2. *Wishes referring to the present are expressed by the imperfect subjunctive.*

3. *Wishes referring to the past are expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive.*

c. The subjunctive in wishes is called the OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, from **optŏ,** *wish.*

443. In appeals and commands both imperative and subjunctive forms are used, as illustrated in the following paradigm :

444.　　　APPEALS AND COMMANDS.

Paradigm.

POSITIVE.		NEGATIVE.	
moneam, *let me advise.*		**nē moneam,** *let me not advise.*	
monē, **moneās,**	} *advise.*	**nōlī monēre,** **nē monueris,**	} *do not advise.*
moneat, **monuerit,**	} *let him advise,* or *he shall advise.*	**nē moneat,** **nē monuerit,**	{ *let him not,* or *he shall not,* *advise.*
moneāmus, *let us advise.*		**nē moneāmus,**	{ *let us not advise.*
monēte, *advise.*		**nōlīte monēre,** *do not advise.*	
moneant, **monuerint,**	{ *let them advise,* or *they shall* *advise.*	**nē moneant,** **nē monuerint,**	{ *let them not,* or *they shall* *not, advise.*

a. In the subjunctive of appeals and commands two points should be noticed : (1) the negative is **nē,** as in wishes;

(2) the perfect subjunctive does not differ in meaning from the present.

b. The common form of negative appeal or command in the second person is nōlī (nōlīte) with the infinitive.

445. *Vocabulary.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk, take a walk.*

beātus, -a, -um, *happy.*

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *care for, till, cultivate; honor.*

in-columis, -e, *unharmed, safe.*

numquam, adv. *never.*

per-fruor, -ī, -frūctus sum, *enjoy fully, enjoy.*

prae-clārus, -a, -um, *very splendid, glorious.*

sīc, adv. *so, thus.*

stō, stāre, stetī, status, *stand.*

sub-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go under, go up to.*

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.*

testūdō, -inis, f. *covering to protect besiegers, testudo.*

tranquillus, -a, -um, *quiet, peaceful, tranquil.*

---

446. 1. Valeant, valeant cīvēs meī; sint incolumēs, sint beātī! 2. Stet haec urbs praeclāra, mihique patria cārissima! 3. Tranquillā rē pūblicā meī cīvēs perfruantur! 4. Utinam Rōmānī virōrum fortium cōpiam habērent! 5. Repertī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē, Catilīna, istā cūrā līberārent. 6. Utinam Catilīna omnīs sēcum suōs ex urbe ēdūxisset! 7. Mīlitēs, testūdine factā, urbis mūrum subiērunt. 8. Colitōte parentēs, lēgibus pārētōte, amātōte amīcōs. 9. Nē mīles mortis perīculum timeat. 10. Cāsus trīstis Prōserpinae erat māgnō dolōrī mātrī, quae hōc dīxit: "Eheu, miserrima Prōserpina, utinam numquam ē domō exiissēs! Iam per sex mēnsīs cūiusque annī nōn eris apud mē. Sīc Iuppiter dēcrēvit. Tum redeās ē rēgnō trīstī quō tē Plūtō ferōx rēx ille abstulit."

447. 1. Let us send a messenger to Caesar **to warn** him not to set out. 2. Touch not wine ; let us **not** touch wine ; they shall not touch wine. 3. Let us go **forth** out of the city and carry our all [1] with us. 4. The **boy wrote** often to his father what he had done. 5. Would **that** my brother were living, and that he were at the **head of** the army ! 6. Oh, take a walk with me in the fields **to-day** ! 7. Would that I had taken a walk with you in the fields yesterday !

LESSON LXIX.

Conditional Sentences.

448. Sentences consisting of two clauses—a condition introduced by **sī**, *if*, or **nisi**, *if not*, *unless*, and a conclusion — are called *Conditional Sentences*.

449. *Model Sentences.*

I. PRESENT AND PAST TIME.

A. NOTHING IMPLIED.

1. **Sī hōc facit, bene est,** *if he is doing this, it is well.*

2. **Sī hōc faciēbat, bene erat,** *if he was doing this, it was well.*

3. **Sī hōc fēcit, bene fuit,** *if he did this, it was well.*

a. By "nothing implied" is meant that there is nothing in the form of the condition to indicate whether what is supposed is true or not.

[1] See **430**, note 2.

450. Rule. — *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and implying nothing as to fact have the indicative in both clauses.*

B. Contrary Implied.

4. **Si hōc faceret, bene esset,** *if he were doing this, it would be well.*

5. **Si hōc fēcisset, bene fuisset,** *if he had done this, it would have been well.*

b. In the first sentence the time denoted is the present. Evidently the time would be the same, if **nunc**, *now*, were inserted.

c. By "contrary implied" is meant that the form of the condition indicates that what is supposed is not true.

451. Rule. — *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and contrary to fact have the subjunctive in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

II. Future Time.

C. More Vivid (Probable).

1. **Si hōc faciet, bene erit,** *if he does* (= *shall do*) *this, it will be well.*

2. **Si hōc fēcerit, bene erit,** *if he does* (= *shall have done*) *this, it will be well.*

D. Less Vivid (Possible).

3. **Si hōc faciat, bene sit,** *if he should do this, it would be well.*

a. Observe that in 1 and 2 the future and the future perfect are translated by the present. The form of 2, that is, the

future perfect, may be used when the supposed future act must be finished before the conclusion can follow: **sī vīcerit, vīctoriae corōnam recipiet,** *if he conquers (shall have conquered), he will receive the crown of victory.* Note the form of translation of the less vivid condition.

452. Rule. — *Conditional sentences referring to future time, if more vivid, take the future or future perfect indicative; if less vivid, take the present subjunctive in both clauses.*

453. *Vocabulary.*

ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, capiō], *receive, accept.*

calceus, -ī, m. *shoe* (p. 152).

Cincinnātus, -ī. m. *Cincinnatus.*

classis, -is, f. (classi-), *fleet.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *choose, appoint, create.*

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dicō], *dictator.*

dis-pertiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [partiō, *divide*], *divide, share.* [again.

iterum, adv. *a second time,*

Milō, -ōnis, m. *Milo.*

mīrābilis, -e [mīror], *wonderful, strange.*

ni-sī, conj. *if not, unless.*

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put forward, propose, offer, proclaim.*

prōpositum, -ī, n. [prōpōnō], *proposal, offer.*

talentum, -ī, n. *talent, a sum of money* ($1132).

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bear, endure, tolerate.*

vestīmentum, -ī, n. [vestiō], *clothing; vesture.*

---

454. 1. Dux iubet, mīles pāret; sī nōn pāret, poenam dat. 2. Sī salūtī patriae prōfueris, tibi ipsī prōderis. 3. Utinam frāter meus vīveret et classī iterum praeesset ! 4. Cum eō diē Milō in senātū fuisset, domum vēnit, vestīmenta et calceōs mūtāvit. 5. Nōn profectus essem, nisi Caesar iussisset. 6. Ā Rōmānīs, sī urbs māgnō in perī-

culō erat, dictātōrēs creābantur.   7. Cincinnātus ab arātrō vocātus est quī esset dictātor.   8. Cum hostīs fugāvisset Rōmamque perīculō līberāsset,[1] domum revertit.

455.   ALEXANDER ET PARMENIO.

Dārēus, Persārum rēx, decem mīlia talentōrum Alexandrō dare voluit, sī Asiam sēcum dispertīre volēbat. Alexander autem eī respondit, "Nisi orbis terrārum duōs sōlēs tolerāre potest, duōs rēgēs Asia nōn tolerābit." Parmeniō, quī ūnus ex amīcīs Alexandrī erat, Dārēī prōpositō audītō, "Ego," inquit, "sī Alexander essem, hōc prōpositum acciperem."   Cuī Alexander : "Et ego, sī Parmeniō essem, acciperem."

456. 1. If Alexander should conquer Asia, would it endure two kings? 2. If he conquers Asia, will it endure two kings? 3. If the world does not endure[2] two suns, neither doth Asia endure two kings. 4. It is said that Darius wanted to share Asia with Alexander. 5. "If," said the former[3] to the latter, "you are willing to share Asia with me, I will give you ten thousand talents." 6. "By no means,"[4] replied Alexander; "if you had offered me[5] twenty thousand talents, I would not have accepted."   7. If the story is true, is it not passing strange[6]? 8. Would Asia have long endured two masters, if the offer of Darius had been accepted?

---

[1] See **337,** *b.*   [3] See **100,** *c.*   [5] Not accusative.
[2] See **449.**   [4] Minimē.   [6] Māximē mīrābilis.

· LESSON LXX.

Reading Lesson.

PROSERPINA.

"Proserpin gathering flowers,
Herself a fairer flower, by gloomy Dis
Was gather'd, which cost Ceres all that pain
To seek her through the world."

457. Prōserpina, Cereris fīlia, aliquandō in Siciliā
ad urbem Hennam in agrīs flōrēs carpēbat, serta nectē-
bat lūdēbatque cum comitibus. Subitō terrā concussā
Plūtō, īnferōrum deus, cūius currum equī ātrī vehēbant
ē terrā ēmersit.   Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit, ut uxor
sua et īnferōrum rēgīna esset ; clāmōrem puellae com-
pressit.   Māter cum īgnōrāret, ubi fīlia esset, tōtum
orbem terrārum frūstrā peragrāvit.

458. Tandem Cerēs ā Sōle, quī omnia cōnspicit, audī-
vit quis fīliam abdūxisset.   Itaque statim iter ad Iovem
flexit et precibus animō ēius persuāsit, ut fīlia ā Plūtōne
remitterētur.   Prōserpinae permissum est, ut per partem
annī apud mātrem, per partem alteram apud īnferōs esset.

459. 1. Who of you can tell by whom Proserpine
was carried off ?   2. She was carried away by Pluto, god
of the Infernals.   3. The god bore her off, as she was
plucking flowers in the plain of Henna.   4. Her mother
did not know whither her daughter had gone.   5. So she
wandered through the whole world to find her.   6. When
she had heard that her daughter was queen of the
Infernals, she turned her course at once to Jupiter.

7. He would have permitted her to return, if she had not tasted food.   8. Poor Proserpine, remain forever among the Infernals !

460.   *Vocabulary.*

āter, -tra, -trum, *black.*

atque [ad, *in addition*], *and also, and.*

com-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [premō], *press together; check, suppress.*

con-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [com, quatiō], *shake violently.*

con-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [com, speciō, *look*], *look at attentively; observe; see, behold.*

ē-mergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *arise, come forth; emerge.*

flectō, -ere, flexī, flexus, *bend, turn.*

licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers., *it is permitted, (one) may.*

ludō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, *play.*

nectō, -ere, nexuī and nexī, nexus, *bind, weave.*

per-agrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ager], *wander through, pass over.*

[prex], precis, f. (used mostly in plu.), *prayer, entreaty.*

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back.*

serta, -ōrum, n. [sero, *plait*], *garlands, wreaths of flowers.*

tandem, adv. [tam], (*just so far*), *at length, finally.*

VEXILLUM.

LESSON LXXI.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

DATIVE OF AGENT.

461. Learn the future active participle and the gerundive of the model and irregular verbs.

462. The First or Active Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum**:

IND. PRES. **Amātūrus sum**, *I am about to (going to, intending to) love.*

IND. IMP. **Amātūrus eram**, *I was about to (going to, intending to), love.*

463.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Quisquam dubitat quid virtūte perfectūrus sit**, *does any one doubt what he will accomplish by his valor?*

2. **Sciēbam quid factūrus essēs**, *I knew what you were going to do.*

a. From the above sentences it appears that the first periphrastic conjugation supplies a future for the subjunctive.

464. The Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by combining the gerundive (future passive participle) with the verb **sum**:

IND. PRES. **Amandus sum**, *I am to be (ought to be, deserve to be, must be) loved.*

IND. IMP. **Amandus eram**, *I was to be (deserved to be, ought to have been) loved.*

465. *Model Sentences.*

1. **Dēlenda est Carthāgō,** *Carthage must be destroyed.*
2. **Caesarī omnia erant agenda,** *everything had to be done by Caesar.*
3. **Mihi scrībendum est,** *I must write (the duty of writing is to me).*
4. **Omnibus moriendum est,** *all must die (the necessity of dying is to all).*

a. Observe that in the second periphrastic conjugation *necessity, duty,* or *obligation* is implied in the gerundive.

b. Notice the impersonal use of the verbs in 3 and 4. By *impersonal* is meant *having no personal subject.*

c. Observe in 2, 3, and 4 that the *person* (**Caesarī, mihi, omnibus**) is expressed by the dative. This dative is called the DATIVE OF AGENT.

466. Rule. — *The gerundive with* **sum** *takes the dative denoting the person who has a thing to do.*

467. *Vocabulary.*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead; do, act.*

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, *think, be of the opinion.*

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus (*stand off*), *cease, desist.*

iam-iam, adv. *already.*

moenia, -ium, n. pl. [**mūniō**], *walls (of a city).*

opus, -eris, n. *work, labor.*

pertinācia, -ae, f. *perseverance, obstinacy, pertinacity.*

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call back, recall; revoke.*

vēxillum, -ī, n. *signal-flag,* p. 183.

---

468. 1. Dux castra mōtūrus est. 2. Scrībenda est mihi epistula. 3. Scrībenda erat tibi epistula. 4. Cum Scīpiō, graviter vulnerātus, in hostium manūs iamiam

ventūrus[1] esset, filius eum perīculō līberāvit. 5. Māg-
nam in spem veniēbat fore[2] ut pertināciā dēsisteret hostis.
6. Hōc cēnseō et Carthāginem esse dēlendam.   7. Ita
nōbīs vīvendum est ut ad mortem parātī sīmus.   8. Caesarī
omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda : vēxillum prōpōnen-
dum,[3] sīgnum tubā dandum,[3] ab opere revocandī[4] mīlitēs,
aciēs īnstruenda,[3] mīlitēs cohortandī.[4]

469. 1. Do you know what he is going to do?   2. We
ought to cultivate virtue.   3. Since you are intending to
go away, we must follow you.   4. If we wish to conquer,
we must undergo all dangers patiently.   5. Let us form a
testudo and go up to the walls of the city.   6. If Pros-
erpine had not been carried off, her mother would not
have wandered over all the earth.   7. Oh that Proserpine
had not been carried off by Pluto to be his wife !   8. Oh
that Jupiter had not permitted his brother to come out
of the earth !

[1] **Iamiam ventūrus,** *just about to come.*
[2] For **futūrum esse**; *that it would be,* i.e., *result.*
[3] Supply **erat.**
[4] Supply **erant.**

CALCAR.

LESSON LXXII.

Gerund and Gerundive. — Supine.

470. Learn the gerunds and supines of the model and irregular verbs.

471. The gerund is a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal noun in *-ing*. It is declined like the singular of **dōnum,** the nominative and the accusative without a preposition being supplied by the infinitive.

472.   *Model Sentences.*

1. N.   **Vidēre est crēdere,** *seeing is believing.*

2. G.   **Caesar hortandī finem facit,** *Caesar makes an end of exhorting.*

3. D.   **Aqua ūtilis est bibendō,** *water is useful for drinking.*

4. Ac.
{ **Hīc locus ad pūgnandum idōneus est,** *this place is suitable for fighting.*

Dīcunt vidēre esse crēdere, *they say that seeing is believing.*

5. Ab.   **Mēns discendō alitur,** *the mind is strengthened by learning.*

473. The use of the gerundive as a passive participle with **sum** has been illustrated in the preceding lesson. But it may also be used as a verbal adjective.

474.   *Model Sentences.*

1. G. **Cōnsilia ineunt** $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\textbf{urbem dēlendī,}\\ \textbf{urbis dēlendae,}\end{array}\right\}$ *they are form-
ing plans for (of) destroying the city (of the city to be
destroyed).*

2. D. **Operam dat agrīs colendīs,** *he devotes himself to
tilling the fields (to the fields to be tilled).*

3. Ac. **Vēnērunt ad pācem petendam,** *they came to seek
peace (for peace to be sought).*

4. Ab. **Occupātus sum in litterīs scrībendīs,** *I am en-
gaged in writing letters (in letters to be written).*

a. Notice that in the first sentence the gerund **dēlendī** lim*its*
cōnsilia in accordance with **36**; but as a *verbal* noun it governs
the same case that any other form of the verb **dēleō** would
take, namely the accusative. What case would **ūtendī**, from
ūtor, govern? What **pārendī**, from **pāreō**?

b. Study the equivalent construction **urbis dēlendae.** Here
urbis depends on **cōnsilia** and the gerundive, like any other
adjective, agrees with its noun.

c. Notice that the accusative of the gerund or gerundive
with **ad** denotes a purpose. This construction is much used.
In what other ways may a purpose be expressed?

475.   *Model Sentences.*

1. **Lēgātī Rōmam veniunt pācem petītum,** *ambassadors
come to Rome to sue for peace.*

2. **Id perfacile est factū,** *that is very easy to do,* or *to be
done.*

a. Observe in the first example that the supine **petītum** has
the same meaning as **ut petant, quī petant,** or **ad petendam;**
that is, it expresses purpose. This use is common after verbs
of motion.

476. Rule. — *The supine in* um *is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

b. In the second example the supine in ū answers the question *in what respect?* **Perfacile factū,** *easy in respect to the doing.* This use is common after adjectives.

c. The supine in ū is really an *ablative of specification.* See **168.**

477.   *Vocabulary.*

at, conj. *but.*

causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason;* abl., *for the sake* (following a genitive).

con-venlō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [**com**], *come together, assemble.*   [*even.*

etiam, conj. [**et, iam**], *also,*

im-perītus, -a, -um [**in**], *unskilled;* w. gen.

in-ermis, -e [**arma**], *unarmed.*

male [**malus**], adv. *badly, ill.*

male-ficus, -ī, m. [**faciō**], *evildoer.*

praeter, prep. w. acc., *besides.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

sōlum, adv. [**sōlus**], *only.*

sūmō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, *take.*

tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon.*

tubicen, -inis, m. [**tuba, canō,** *sing*], *trumpeter.*

---

478. 1. Multī convēnērunt studiō[1] videndae novae urbis. 2. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā[2] Gallī mittunt. 3. Gallī ad Caesarem vēnērunt pācem petītum. 4. Sī lēgātī veniant quī pācem petant, Caesar patienter eōs audiat. 5. Inter[3] pūgnandum trīgintā nāvēs captae sunt. 6. Quod optimum est factū faciam. 7. Cincinnātus, quī esset[4] vir bellī[5] perītissimus, dictātor dē exercitū līberandō creātus est. 8. Tubicen, cum ipse nōn pūgnāret, tamen aliōs ad pūgnam incitābat.

[1] See **132.**

[2] Notice this way of expressing purpose.

[3] *During.*

[4] See **433.**

[5] *In war.*

9. Hostēs putāvērunt tubicinem, quī aliōs ad **pūgnam** incitāret,[1] pūniendum esse.   10. Utinam **tubicen nē captus esset!**

479.   Tubicen.

Tubicen ab hostibus captus est.   "Cūr mē," inquit, "interficitis? nam inermis sum, neque quidquam habeō praeter hanc tubam."   At hostēs, "Propter hōc **ipsum,**" inquiunt, "tē interficiēmus quod, ipse pūgnandī imperītus,[2] aliōs ad pūgnam incitāre solēs."   Nōn sōlum maleficī sunt pūniendī, sed etiam eī quī aliōs ad male faciendum incitent.

480. 1. The trumpeter asked the enemy's commander why he was going to put him to death. 2. "During the fight,"[3] said he, "I did not use any[4] weapon. 3. I could not have[5] killed any one[6] with this trumpet. 4. Do not put me to death.   5. I am not the man[7] who deserves to be punished.   6. If I had been fighting, I would not say a word."[8]   7. But the general said, "That trumpet of yours is a weapon which incites[9] the soldiers to fight. You must die."   8. Then the trumpeter, about to die,[10] said, "O that I had not incited others to evil doing."

---

[1] See **433.**
[2] *Though unskilled.*
[3] Cf. **478,** 5.
[4] See p. **124,** note 7.
[5] *Could not have = was not able to.*
[6] A form of **quisquam.**
[7] Cf. **437,** 6.
[8] *Would say nothing.*
[9] Subjunctive of characteristic (**433**).
[10] **moritūrus.**

ROMANUS IN TOGA PRAETEXTA.
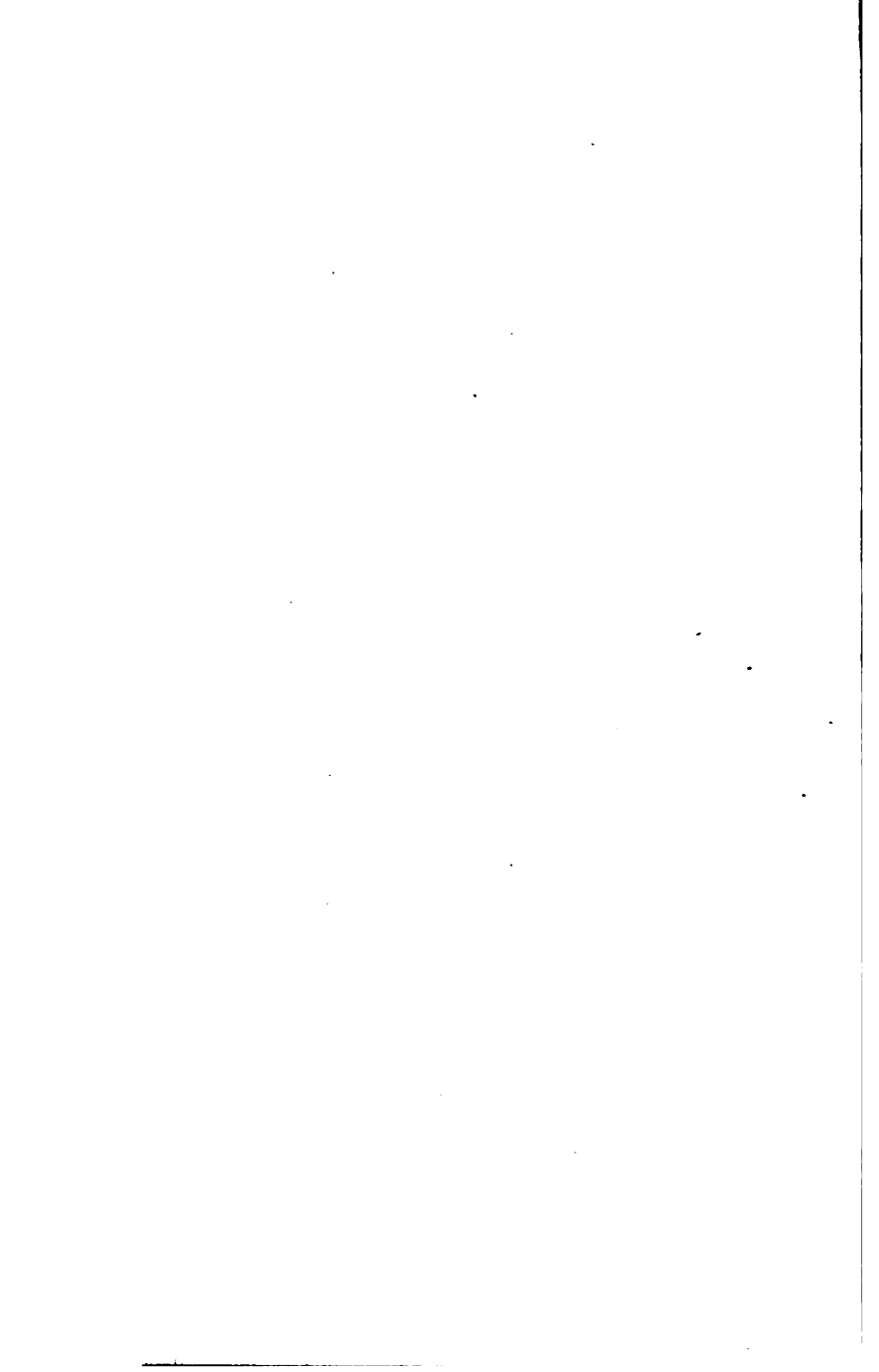
READING LESSONS.

Fables.

481.   MULIER ET GALLINA.

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī[1] cottīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum.   Hinc suspicārī coepit illam[2] aurī massam intus cēlāre, et gallīnam occīdit.   Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod[3] in aliīs gallīnīs reperīrī solet. Itaque dum māiōribus dīvitiīs inhiat,[4] etiam minōrēs[5]   5 perdidit.

482.   VULPES ET UVA.

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta[1] ad illam subsiluit omnium vīrium suārum contentiōne, sī[2] eam forte attingere posset.   Tandem dēfatīgāta inānī labōre discēdēns, "At nunc etiam," inquit, "acerbae[3] sunt, nec eās in viā repertās[4] tollerem."   5

481. [1] *For her.*

[2] *Illam* = *illam gallīnam*, and is subject accusative of *cēlāre*.

[3] *Quod* = *id quod.*

[4] See page 87, note 1.

[5] Supply the Latin noun in the proper form.

482. [1] Perfect participle agreeing with *vulpēs*. Translate by the present participle.

[2] *To see if.*

[3] The plural, as if *ūvae* had been used.

[4] *Eās repertās*, *them found* = *if I had found them*. See **353**, *c.*

483. Rusticus et Canis Fidelis.

Rūsticus in agrōs exiit ad opus suum. Fīliolum, quī in cūnīs iacēbat, relīquit canī[1] fidēlī atque validō custōdiendum. Adrēpsit anguis immānis, quī puerulum exstinctūrus erat. Sed custōs fidēlis corripit eum dentibus
5 acūtīs, et, dum eum necāre studet,[2] cūnās simul ēvertit super exstinctum anguem. Paulō post ex arvō rediit agricola ; cum cūnās ēversās cruentumque canis rictum vidēret, īrā accenditur.[3] Temerē igitur custōdem fīliolī interfēcit ligōne, quem manibus tenēbat. Sed ubi cūnās
10 restituit,[4] super anguem occīsum[5] repperit puerum vīvum et incolumem. Paenitentia facinoris[6] sēra[7] fuit.

484. Puer Mendax.

Puer in prātō ovēs pāscēbat,[1] atque per iocum clāmitābat, ut sibi auxilium ferrētur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrēbant, neque[2] lupum inveniēbant. Ita ter quaterque sē ēlūsōs[3] ā puerō vīdē
5 runt. Deinde[4] cum ipse[5] lupus aggriederētur, et puer

---

483. [1] Dative of agent, **466.** Translate *left for his . . . dog to guard.* What literally?

　[2] See page 87, note 1.

　[3] Present for perfect, called *historical present.*

　[4] Translate as if it were *restituerat* ; after ubi, ut, and post

quam, meaning *when,* the perfect indicative is commonly used, but it is best rendered by the pluperfect.

　[5] See **353,** *c* (2).

　[6] *For the deed.* Why not dative ? **36.**

　[7] *Too late.*

484. [1] The imperfect denoting customary action ; render, *used to tend.*

　[2] *But . . . not.*

　[3] See page 133, note 1.

　[4] Pronounced de-in´-de.

　[5] *Really.*

rē vērā⁶ implōrāret auxilium, nēmō gregī⁷ subvēnit, et
ovēs lupī praeda⁸ sunt factae.   Mendācī hominī nōn
crēdimus, etiam cum vēra⁹ dīcit.

485.   Senex et Mors.

.   Senex quīdam līgna in silvā cecīderat, et, fasce in
umerōs sublātō,¹ domum redīre coepit.   Cum fatīgātus
esset² et onere et itinere, dēposuit līgna, et, senectūtis³
et inopiae³ miseriās sēcum reputāns, clārā vōce invocāvit
mortem, ut sē omnibus malīs⁴ līberāret.   Mox adest⁵   5
mors et interrogat quid vellet.   Tum senex perterritus :
"Prō! hunc līgnōrum fascem quaesō umerīs⁶ meīs
impōnās."⁷

486.   Vulpes et Leo.

Vulpēs numquam leōnem vīderat.   Cum huīc¹ forte
occurrisset, ita exterrita est, ut paene morerētur² formī-
dine.   Eundem cōnspicāta est iterum.   Tum extimuit
illa quidem, sed nēquāquam ut anteā.   Cum tertiō³ leōnī
obviam facta esset, adeō nōn perterrita fuit,⁴ ut audēret²   5
accēdere propius et conloquī cum eō.

---

⁶ **Rē vērā** = *in earnest.*

⁷ Why dative? See **397.**

485. ¹ From **tollō.**

² See **382.**

³ Notice the order; the geni-
tives coming first are made
emphatic.   ⁴ See **413.**

486. ¹ For the dative see
397.

² Is this a subjunctive of pur-
pose or of result?

⁸ Predicate nominative.

⁹ *True (things)* = *the truth.*

⁵ See **483,** note 3.

⁶ **Umerīs . . . impōnās;** cf.
nōbīs . . . imposuit in **313.**

⁷ **Quaesō . . . impōnās** = **quae-
sō ut impōnās.**

⁸ *The third time.*

⁴ **Adeō . . . fuit,** *to such a
degree was not frightened* = *was
so far from being frightened.*

Stories from Roman History.

487. Horatii et Curiatii.

Tullō Hostīliō rēgnante bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs exortum est.[1] Ducibus Hostīliō et Fūfetiō placuit, paucōrum certāmine fāta[2] utrīusque populī dēcernī. Erant apud Rōmānōs trigeminī frātrēs Horātiī, 5 trēs apud Albānōs Cūriātiī. Cum eīs agunt rēgēs, ut prō suā quisque[3] patriā dīmicent ferrō. Foedus ictum est eā lēge, ut, unde victōria,[4] ibi imperium esset.

Ictō foedere trigeminī arma capiunt, et in medium inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Cōnsēderant utrimque duo 10 exercitūs. Datur sīgnum, īnfestīsque armīs ternī iuvenēs, māgnōrum exercituum animōs gerentēs,[5] concurrunt. Ut[6] prīmō concursū increpuēre[7] arma, micantēsque fulsēre[7] gladiī, horror ingēns spectantēs perstringit. Cōnsertīs deinde manibus, statim duo Rōmānī alius super alium[8] 15 exspīrantēs cecidērunt;[9] trēs Albānī vulnerātī.[10] Ad cāsum Rōmānōrum conclāmāvit gaudiō exercitus Albānus. Rōmānōs iam spēs tōta dēserēbat. Ūnum

487. [1] **Exortum est** = incēpit.

[2] Subject-accusative of **dēcernī**; *that the destinies ... should be decided.*

[3] Notice the order, **suā quisque**, which is constant in these words.

[4] **Unde victōria ... esset**, *on whichever side the victory should be, there should be the power.*

[5] **Gerentēs** = **habentēs**; but **gerentēs** is a nobler expression.

[6] **Ut** followed by the indicative means *when* or *as*.

[7] Notice the form of the perfect.

They first hurled their spears, which rang against the shields; then they drew their swords and rushed into close combat.

[8] See **292,** *a.* **Alter super alterum** would be better. Why?

[9] From **cadō.**

[10] Supply **sunt.**

Horātium trēs Cūriātiī circumsteterant.   Forte is in-
teger[11] fuit, sed quia tribus impār erat, ut distraheret
hostēs, fugam capessīvit, singulōs[12] per intervālla secū- 20
tūrōs esse ratus.[13]   Iam aliquantum spati[14] ex eō locō,
ubi pūgnātum est,[15] aufūgerat, cum respiciēns videt ūnum
ē Cūriātiīs haud procul ab sēsē abesse.   In eum māgnō
impetū redit, et dum Albānus exercitus inclāmat Cūriā-
tiīs, ut opem ferant frātrī, iam Horātius eum occīderat. 25
Alterum[16] deinde, priusquam tertius posset cōnsequī,
interfēcit.

Iam singulī supererant, sed nec spē nec vīribus parēs.
Alter erat intāctus ferrō et gemināta victōriā ferōx;[17]
alter fessum[18] vulnere, fessum cursū trahēbat corpus. 30
Nec illud proelium fuit.   Rōmānus exsultāns male sus-
tinentem[19] arma Cūriātium cōnficit, iacentem[20] spoliat.
Rōmānī ovantēs āc grātulantēs Horātium accipiunt et
domum dēdūcunt.

488.   CINCINNATUS.   458 B.C.

T. Quīnctius Cincinnātus omnium cōnsēnsū dictātor[1]
est dictus.   Ille, spēs ūnica imperī Rōmānī, trāns Tiberim

[11] Integer = incolumis.

[12] Subject-accusative of secū-
tūrōs esse; *thinking that they
would follow one by one.*

[13] Ratus = putāns.   Perfect
participles must sometimes be
rendered as if they were pres-
ent participles.

[14] See **203.**

[15] See page 109, note 4.

[16] *The second.*   [17] *Emboldened.*

[18] Agrees with corpus.

[19] Take the words in this
order :   Cūriātium male susti-
nentem arma cōnficit.   On sus-
tinentem see **353,** *c* (2).

[20] Supply et to precede, and
render, *as he lay dead.*

488. [1] A magistrate appointed
in times of extraordinary danger
to hold office six months, and in-

vested with supreme power.   On
this occasion the Aequi, enemies
of the Romans, had surrounded

tunc quattuor iūgerūm [2] colēbat agrum.   Ad quem missī
lēgātī nūdum [3] eum arantem offendērunt.   Salūte [4] datā
5 redditāque Quīnctius togam [5] properē ē tuguriō prōferre
uxōrem Raciliam iussit, ut senātūs mandāta togātus
audīret.

Postquam, abstersō pulvere āc sūdōre, togā indūtus [6]
prōcessit [7] Quīnctius, dictātōrem eum lēgātī grātulantēs
10 cōnsalūtant; quantus terror in exercitū sit,[8] expōnunt.
Quīnctius igitur Rōmam vēnit et antecēdentibus līctōri-
bus domum dēductus est.   Posterō diē ab urbe profectus,
exercitū Rōmānō līberātō, victōs hostīs sub iugum [9] mīsit.
Urbem triumphāns ingressus est.   Ductī ante currum
15 hostium ducēs, mīlitāria sīgna [10] praelāta; secūtus est
exercitus praedā onustus; epulae īnstrūctae sunt ante
omnium domōs.   Quīnctius sextō decimō diē dictātūrā,
quam in [11] sex mēnsīs accēperat, sē abdicāvit et ad
bovēs [12] rediit triumphālis agricola.

489.   GAIUS DUILIUS.   260 B.C.

C. Duilius Poenōs nāvālī proeliō prīmus [1] dēvīcit.   Quī
cum [2] vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicīs vēlōcitāte superārī,

---

the whole Roman army com-
manded by the consul.

[2] Contracted genitive plural,
depending on **agrum.**

[3] That is, without his toga.
See illustration, page 34.

[4] **Salūte   datā   redditāque,**
freely rendered, *after exchanging
greetings.*   What literally?

[5] See illustration, page 191.

[6] **Indūtus = vestītus.**

489. [1] *Was the first to.*

[7] See **483**, note 4.

[8] **Quantus ... sit,** an indirect
question depending on **expōnunt.**

[9] A yoke of spears formed by
two upright spears with another
laid upon them transversely.
Sending under the yoke was
symbolical of defeat and humil-
iation.

[10] See illustrations, page 105.

[11] *For.*   [12] From **bōs.**

[2] **Quī cum,** *when he.*

manūs ferreās, quās corvōs vocāvēre,[3] māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvīs tenendāsque ūtilem excōgitāvit. Ea māchina Rōmānīs māgnō ūsuī fuit; nam iniectīs illīs corvīs hostilem nāvem apprehendēbant,[4] deinde superiectō pōnte in eam īnsiliēbant et gladiō velut in pūgnā terrestrī dīmicābant; unde Rōmānīs, quī rōbore praestābant, facilis victōria fuit. Inter pūgnandum trigintā hostium nāvēs captae sunt, mersae tredecim. Duīlius victor Rōmam reversus, prīmus[5] nāvālem triumphum ēgit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit, quod invictī terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum possent.[6] Itaque Duīliō concessum est,[7] ut per omnem vītam praelūcente fūnālī et praecinente tībīcine ā cēnā redīret.

490. MARCUS PORCIUS CATO, PUER. 85 B.C.

M. Porcius Catō iam puer[1] invictum animī rōbur ostendit. Cum[2] in domō Drūsī avunculī suī ēducārētur, Latīnī dē cīvitāte impetrandā[3] Rōmam vēnērunt. Popēdius, Latīnōrum prīnceps, quī Drūsī hospes erat, Catōnem puerum rogāvit, ut Latīnōs apud avunculum adiuvāret. Catō vultū cōnstantī negāvit[4] id sē factūrum. Iterum deinde āc saepius[5] interpellātus in prōpositō perstitit. Tunc

---

[3] Note this form of the perfect and compare **increpuēre, 487.**

[4] **Iniectīs ... apprehendēbant.** *By throwing these grappling-hooks upon a hostile ship they would catch hold of it.*

490. [1] *Already a boy = even in boyhood.* [2] *While.*

[3] *Respecting citizenship to be obtained = to obtain citizenship.*

[5] See note 1.

[6] *They could very much = could accomplish a great deal.*

[7] See p. 109, note 4. *Duīlius was allowed.*

[4] *Denied himself to be going to do it = refused to do it.*

[5] *Again and again.*

Popēdius puerum in excelsam⁶ aedium partem levātum
tenuit,⁷ et sē⁸ abiectūrum inde minātus est, nisi precibus
10 obtemperāret ; neque hōc metū⁹ ā sententiā eum potuit
dīmovēre.   Tunc Popēdius exclāmāsse fertur : "Grātu-
lēmur nōbīs, Latīnī, hunc esse tam parvum ; sī enim
senātor esset,¹⁰ nē spērāre quidem iūs cīvitātis licēret." ¹⁰

491.   GAIUS MARIUS.   88 B.C.

Marius¹ hostīs persequentīs fugiēns aliquamdiū in
palūde dēlituit.   Sed paulō post repertus extrāctusque,
ut erat² nūdō corpore caenōque oblitus, iniectō in collum
lōrō Minturnās raptus³ et in custōdiam cōniectus est.
5 Missus est ad eum occīdendum servus pūblicus, nātiōne⁴
Cimber, quem Marius vultūs auctōritāte dēterruit.   Cum
enim hominem ad sē strictō gladiō venientem vīdisset,
"Tūne,⁵ homō," inquit, "C. Marium audēbis occīdere ?"
Quō audītō attonitus ille āc tremēns abiectō ferrō fūgit,

⁶ **Excelsam = altam.**

⁷ **Puerum . . . levātum tenuit,** *held the raised up boy = raised up and held the boy.*   See **353,** *c* (3).

⁸ The subject-accusative of abiectūrum (esse).   **Eum,** referring to **puerum,** must be supplied as the object of abiec-

tūrum.   *He threatened himself to be going to throw him* (**eum**) *down from there = he threatened to throw him down from there.*

⁹ *By this fear* means *by fear of this.*

¹⁰ What time is denoted, and what is implied ?   See **451.**

491. ¹ Marius had been driven from Rome by his powerful rival, Sulla, and was fleeing for life.

² *Just as he was.*

³ The following **et** shows that **est** must be supplied.

⁴ See 168.

⁵ The -**ne** is the interrogative particle.

Marium[6] sē nōn posse occīdere clāmitāns.   Marius de- 10
inde ab iīs, quī prius eum occīdere voluerant, ē carcere
ēmissus est.

492.   Gaius Iulius Caesar.   44 b.c.

Atque cum Caesar eō diē in senātum vēnisset, adsīden-
tem[1] coniūrātī speciē officī circumstetērunt īlicōque ūnus,
quasi aliquid rogātūrus, propius accessit, renuentīque[2]
ab[3] utrōque umerō togam apprehendit.   Deinde clāman-
tem,[4] "Ista[5] quidem vīs est," Casca, ūnus ē coniūrātīs, 5
adversum vulnerat paulum īnfrā iugulum.   Caesar Cascae
bracchium adreptum[6] graphiō trāiēcit cōnātusque prō-
silīre aliō vulnere tardātus est.   Cum Mārcum Brūtum,
quem fīlī locō habēbat, in sē inruentem vīdisset, dīxisse
fertur : "Tū quoque, mī fīlī !"   Dein ut[7] animadvertit, 10
undique sē[8] strictīs pūgiōnibus petī,[8] togā caput ob-
volvit[9] et ita tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōnfossus est.

[6] **Marium . . . clāmitāns.**
Translate in this order : **clāmi-
tāns sē nōn posse occīdere Ma-**
rium. **Marium** is put first for em-
phasis. The most emphatic word
in a sentence is put first. See **33.**

492. [1] That is, **eum** (*C*) **adsīden-
tem,** following **circumstetērunt.**

[2] **Renuentī = recūsantī.** Sup-
ply **ēī.** *One, to him (viz. Caesar)
refusing, seizes the toga = on
Caesar's refusal, one seizes his
toga.*

[3] Not *from* here, but *on.*

[4] Agrees with **Caesarem** under-
stood, object of **vulnerat.**

[5] *This* (that you are doing).
See **304,** *f.*

[6] See **353,** *c* (3).

[7] See **487,** note 6.

[8] *Himself to be attacked = that
he was being attacked.*

[9] " . . . then burst his mighty heart ;
And, in his mantle muffling up his face,
Even at the base of Pompey's statua,
Which all the while ran blood, great Caesar fell."

493. Caesar Octavianus Augustus. 63 B.C. to 14 A.D.

Formā [1] fuit Augustus eximiā et per omnēs aetātis gra-
dūs venustissimā.   Erat tamen omnis lēnōcinī neglegēns
et in capite cōmendō [2] tam incūriōsus, ut eō ipsō tempore,
quō [3] illud tōnsōribus committeret, aut legeret aliquid aut
5 etiam scrīberet.

Paucīs annīs antequam morerētur, gravissimam in Ger-
māniā [4] accēpit clādem, tribus legiōnibus cum duce Vārō
lēgātīsque et auxiliīs omnibus caesīs.   Hāc nūntiātā ex-
cubiās per urbem [5] indīxit, nē quis tumultus exsisteret, et
10 māgnōs lūdōs Iovī optimō māximō vōvit, sī rēs pūblica
in meliōrem statum vertisset.   Adeō dēnique cōnsternā-
tum [6] ferunt,[7] ut, per continuōs mēnsīs barbā capillōque
submīssō, caput interdum foribus inlīderet, vōciferāns,
"Quīnctilī Vāre, legiōnēs redde ! " diemque clādis quo-
15 tannīs maestum habuerit ac lūgubrem.

Tandem adflīctā valētūdine in Campāniam concessit,
ubi, remissō ad ōtium animō, nūllō hilaritātis genere
abstinuit.   Suprēmō vītae diē petītō speculō capillum
sibi cōmī iussit et amīcōs circumstantēs percontātus,
20 ecquid [8] eīs vidērētur mīmum vītae commodē trānsēgisse,

493. [1] What other case might
have been used? See **140.**

[2] For the construction com-
pare **474,** 4.

[3] Supply tempore and translate
when.

[4] Marks the place of clādem.
Augustus was not himself in
Germany.

[5] Urbs often used alone of
Rome.

[6] The Latin fully expressed
would be, eum cōnsternātum
esse, accusative with infinitive
depending on ferunt.

[7] Ferunt = dīcunt. Cf. fertur
= dīcitur, **492,** line 10.

[8] *Whether he had played the
comedy of life fairly well.*

adiēcit solitam clausulam,[9] "Ēdite strepitum vōsque
omnēs cum gaudiō applaudite." Obiit Nōlae sextum
et septuāgēsimum annum agēns.

[9] In the Roman theatres it
was usual for an actor, at the
close of a comedy, to invite the
applause of the audience.
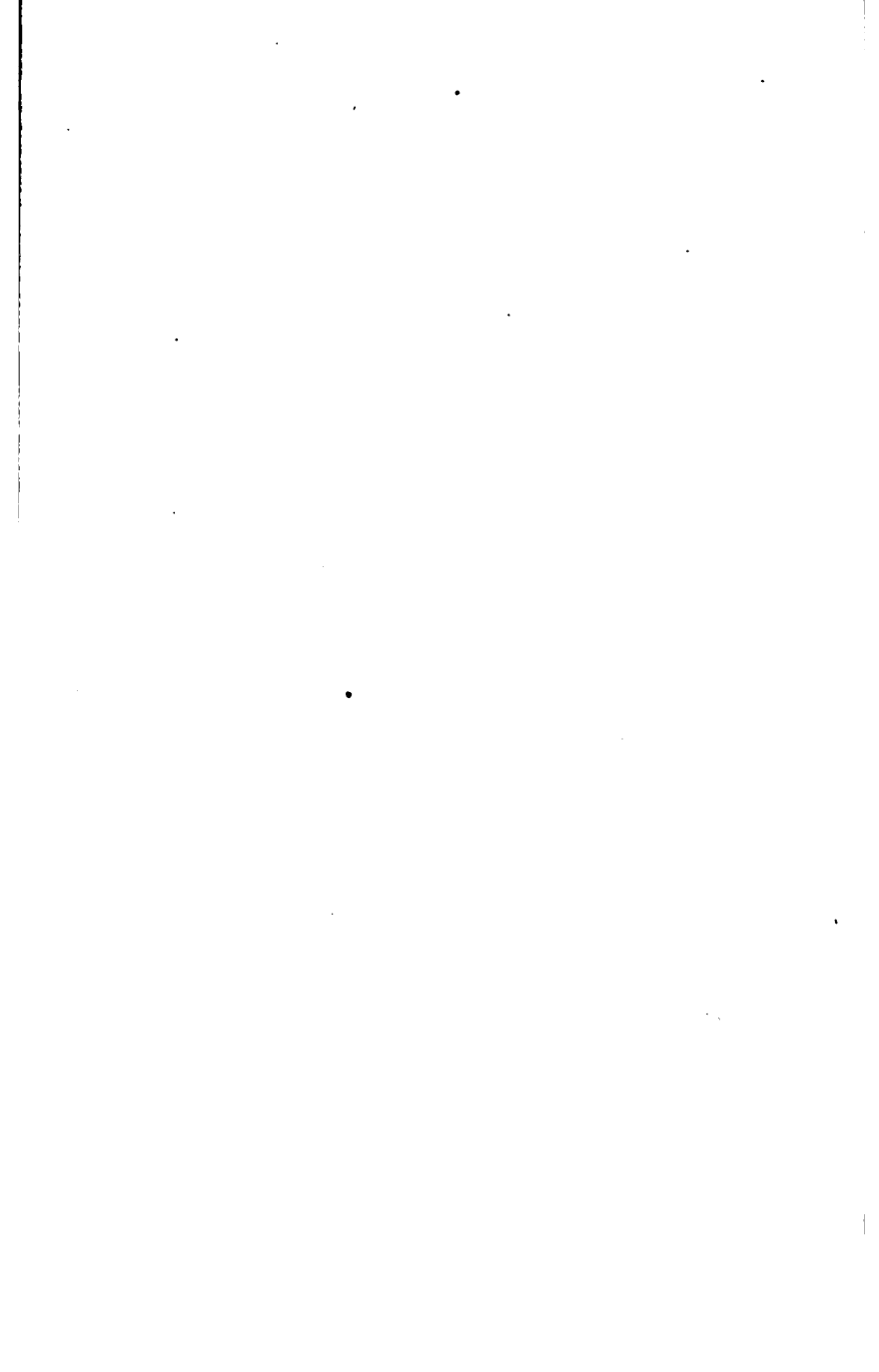
TABLES

OF

DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

NOUNS.

494. First Declension. — A-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. tuba, *a trumpet.*	tubae, *trumpets*
G. tubae, *of a trumpet.*	tubārum, *of trumpets.*
D. tubae, *to* or *for a trumpet.*	tubīs, *to* or *for trumpets.*
Ac. tubam, *a trumpet.*	tubās, *trumpets.*
Ab. tubā, *with a trumpet.*	tubīs, *with trumpets.*

495. Second Declension. — O-Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	hortus	hortī	dōnum	dōna
G.	hortī	hortōrum	dōnī	dōnōrum
D.	hortō	hortīs	dōnō	dōnīs
Ac.	hortum	hortōs	dōnum	dōna
Ab.	hortō	hortīs	dōnō	dōnīs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us of the second declension has a special form in -e: horte.

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
G.	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum	virī	virōrum
D.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	.virō	virīs
Ac.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs	virum	virōs
Ab.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	fīlius	fīliī	cōnsilium	cōnsilia
G.	fīlī, -iī	fīliōrum	cōnsilī, -iī	cōnsiliōrum
D.	fīliō	fīliīs	cōnsiliō	cōnsiliīs
Ac.	fīlium	fīliōs	cōnsilium	cōnsilia
Ab.	fīliō	fīliīs	cōnsiliō	cōnsiliīs

a. The vocative singular of **fīlius** is **fīlī.**

496.   Third Declension.

Mute Stems.

SINGULAR.

N.	prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
G.	prīncipis	rēgis	mīlitis	capitis
D.	prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
Ac.	prīncipem	rēgem	mīlitem	caput
Ab.	prīncipe	rēge	mīlite	capite

PLURAL.

N.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
G.	prīncipum	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum
D.	prīnci'pibus	rēgibus	mīli'tibus	capi'tibus
Ac.	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
Ab.	prīnci'pibus	rēgibus	mīli'tibus	capi'tibus

SINGULAR.

N.	pēs	lapis	virtūs
G.	pedis	lapidis	virtūtis
D.	pedī	lapidī	virtūtī
Ac.	pedem	lapidem	virtūtem
Ab.	pede	lapide	virtūte

PLURAL.

N.	pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
G.	pedum	lapidum	virtūtum
D.	pedibus	lapi'dibus	virtūtibus
Ac.	pedēs	lapidēs	virtūtēs
Ab.	pedibus	lapi'dibus	virtūtibus

Liquid Stems.

SINGULAR.

N.	cōnsul	pater	victor	homō
G.	cōnsulis	patris	victōris	hominis
D.	cōnsulī	patrī	victōrī	hominī
Ac.	cōnsulem	patrem	victōrem	hominem
Ab.	cōnsule	patre	victōre	homine

PLURAL.

N.	cōnsulēs	patrēs	victōrēs	hominēs
G.	cōnsulum	patrum	victōrum	hominum
D.	cōnsu'libus	patribus	victōribus	homi'nibus
Ac.	cōnsulēs	patrēs	victōrēs	hominēs
Ab.	cōnsu'libus	patribus	victōribus	homi'nibus

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
G.	vulneris	vulnerum	corporis	corporum
D.	vulnerī	vulne'ribus	corporī	corpo'ribus
Ac.	vulnus	vulnera	corpus	corpora
Ab.	vulnere	vulne'ribus	corpore	corpo'ribus

Stems in i.

SINGULAR.

N.	īgnis	hostis	nūbēs	mare
G.	īgnis	hostis	nūbis	maris
D.	ignī	hostī	nūbī	marī
Ac.	īgnem	hostem	nūbem	mare
Ab.	īgnī, -e	hoste	nūbe	marī

PLURAL.

N.	īgnēs	hostēs	nūbēs	maria
G.	īgnium	hostium	nūbium	———
D.	īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus	maribus
Ac.	īgnīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs	maria
Ab.	īgnibus	hostibus	nūbibus	maribus

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	animal	animālia	calcar	calcāria
G.	animālis	animālium	calcāris	calcārium
D.	animālī	animālibus	calcārī	calcāribus
Ac.	animal	animālia	calcar	calcāria
Ab.	animālī	animālibus	calcārī	calcāribus

SINGULAR.

N.	cliēns	urbs	arx	nox
G.	clientis	urbis	arcis	noctis
D.	clientī	urbī	arcī	noctī
Ac.	clientem	urbem	arcem	noctem
Ab.	cliente	urbe	arce	nocte

PLURAL.

N.	clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	noctēs
G.	clientium	urbium	arcium	noctium
D.	clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus
Ac.	clientīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	arcīs, -ēs	noctīs, -ēs
Ab.	clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	noctibus

497. Fourth Declension. — U-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. gradus	gradūs	cornū	cornua
G. gradūs	graduum	cornūs	cornuum
D. graduī, -ū	gradibus	cornū,	cornibus
Ac. gradum	gradūs	cornū	cornua
Ab. gradū	gradibus	cornū	cornibus

498. Fifth Declension. — E-Stems.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G. diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D. diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac. diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab. diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

499. Special Paradigms.

SINGULAR.

N. deus	domus	senex	vīs
G. deī	domūs, -ī (loc.)	senis	vīs [1]
D. deō	domuī, -ō	senī	vī [1]
Ac. deum	domum	senem	vim
Ab. deō	domō, -ū	sene	vī

PLURAL.

N. deī, diī, dī	domūs	senēs	vīrēs
G. deōrum, deūm	domuum, -ōrum	senum	vīrium
D. deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus
Ac. deōs	domōs, -ūs	senēs	vīrēs
Ab. deīs, diīs, dīs	domibus	senibus	vīribus

[1] The genitive and dative singular are rare.

SINGULAR.

N.	iter	Iuppiter	bōs	nix
G.	itineris	Iovis	bovis	nivis
D.	itinerī	Iovī	bovī	nivī
Ac.	iter	Iovem	bovem	nivem
AB.	itinere	Iove	bove	nive

PLURAL.

N.	itinera	——	bovēs	nivēs
G.	itinerum	——	bovum, boum	nivium
D.	itineribus	——	bōbus, būbus	nivibus
Ac.	itinera	——	bovēs	nivēs
AB.	itineribus	——	bōbus, būbus	nivibus

———○○———

ADJECTIVES.

500.   First and Second Declensions.

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	bonus	bona	bonum
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum
AB.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL.

N.	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonōs	bonās	bona
AB.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	līber	lībera	līberum
G.	līberī	līberae	līberī
D.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Ac.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Ab.	līberō	līberā	līberō

PLURAL.

N.	līberī	līberae	lībera
G.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
D.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Ac.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Ab.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

SINGULAR.

N.	aeger	aegra	aegrum
G.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
D.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
Ac.	aegrum	aegram	aegrum
Ab.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō

PLURAL.

N.	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
G.	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
D.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Ac.	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
Ab.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

501.   Third Declension.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
N.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
G.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
D.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Ac.	audācem	audāx	audācis, -ēs	audācia
Ab.	audācī, -e	audācī, -e	audācibus	audācibus

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
N.	prūdēns	prūdēns	prūdentēs	prūdentia
G.	prūdentis	prūdentis	prūdentium	prūdentium
D.	prūdentī	prūdentī	prūdentibus	prūdentibus
Ac.	prūdentem	prūdēns	prūdentis, -ēs	prūdentia
AB.	prūdentī, -e	prūdentī, -e	prūdentibus	prūdentibus

N.	brevis	breve	brevēs	brevia
G.	brevis	brevis	brevium	brevium
D.	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus
Ac.	brevem	breve	brevis, -ēs	brevia
AB.	brevī	brevī	brevibus	brevibus

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācris, -ēs	ācria
AB.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

502. Irregular Adjectives.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
G.	alīus	alīus	alīus	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Ac.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
AB.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
G.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
D.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Ac.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Ab.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

503.   Declension of Comparatives.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
G.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
D.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Ac.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrīs, -ēs	altiōra
Ab.	altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus

N.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D.	——	————	plūribus	plūribus
Ac.	——	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
Ab.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

504. Irregular Comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, *easy.*	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, *hard.*	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, *like.*	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, *unlike.*	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, *low.*	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, *slender.*	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, *outward.*	exterior, *outer, exterior.*	extrēmus } *outermost,* extimus } *last.*
īnferus, *below.*	īnferior, *lower.*	īnfimus } īmus } *lowest.*
posterus, *following.*	posterior, *later.*	postrēmus } postumus } *last.*
superus, *above.*	superior, *higher.*	suprēmus } summus } *highest.*
[cis, citrā, *on this side.*]	citerior, *hither.*	citimus, *hithermost.*
[in, intrā, *in, within.*]	interior, *inner.*	intimus, *inmost.*
[prae, prō, *before.*]	prior, *former.*	prīmus, *first.*
[prope, *near.*]	propior, *nearer.*	proximus, *next.*
[ūltrā, *beyond.*]	ūlterior, *further.*	ūltimus, *furthest.*
bonus, -a, -um, *good.*	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, *bad.*	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, *great.*	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
multus -a, -um, *much.* } multī, -ae, -a, *many.* }	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, um, *small.*	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, senis, *old.*	senior	māximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, *young.*	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, *old.*	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um

505. Numerals.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus (*or* alter)
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quartus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim, *or* sexdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19. ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21. { vīgintī ūnus, *or* ūnus et vīgintī	{ vīcēsimus prīmus, *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus
22. { vīgintī duo, *or* duo et vīgintī	{ vīcēsimus secundus, *or* alter et vīcēsimus
28. duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
29. ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30. trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
.80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100. centum	centēsimus
101. {centum ūnus, *or* {centum et ūnus	{centēsimus prīmus, *or* {centēsimus et prīmus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300. trecentī	trecentēsimus
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600. sēscentī, *or* sexcentī	sēscentēsimus
700. septingentī	septingentēsimus
800. octingentī	octingentēsimus
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1,000. mīlle	mīllēsimus
2,000. duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus
100,000. centum mīlia	centiēs mīllēsimus

——◦◦——

PRONOUNS.

506. Personal.

	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	——	——
G.	meī	nostrūm, -trī	tuī	vestrūm, -trī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē,	sē, sēsē
AB.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē,	sē, sēsē

507. Demonstrative.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

N.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hūĭus	hūĭus	hūĭus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huĭc	huĭc	huĭc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illĭus	illĭus	illĭus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

N.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G.	ēĭus	ēĭus	ēĭus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istĭus	istĭus	istĭus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Ac.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Ab.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	īdem	e'adem	idem	{eīdem / iīdem	eaedem	e'adem
G.	ēius'dem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrun'dem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{eīs'dem / iīs'dem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem
Ac.	eun'dem	eandem	idem	eōs'dem	eāsdem	e'adem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem

N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

508.   Relative.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

509.   Interrogative.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

510.   Indefinite.

SINGULAR.

N.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
G.	alicū′ius	alicūius	alicūius
D.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL.

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	alī′quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR.

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
G.	cūius′dam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
D.	cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Ab.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL.

N..	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrun′dam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibus′dam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS.

511.   First Conjugation. — Ā-Verbs.

amō, *love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.   PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.

I love, am loving, do love, etc.   *I am loved,* etc.

ámō	àmāmus	amor	amāmur
àmās	amātis	amāris, *or* -re	amāminī
ámat	ámant	amātur	amantur

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.   *I was loved,* etc.

amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābámur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris, *or* -re	amābāminī
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur

FUTURE.

I shall love, etc.   *I shall be loved,* etc.

amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis, *or* -re	amābiminī
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

PERFECT.

I have loved, I loved, etc.   *I have been (was) loved,* etc.

amāvī	amāvimus		sum		sumus
amāvistī	amāvistis	amātus	es	amātī	estis
amāvit	amāvērunt, *or* -re		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved, etc.		*I had been loved*, etc.		
amāveram	amāverāmus		eram	erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis	amātus	erās amātī	erātis
amāverat	amāverant		erat	erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have loved, etc.		*I shall have been loved*, etc.		
amāverō	amāverimus		erō	erimus
amāveris	amāveritis	amātus	eris amātī	eritis
amāverit	amāverint		erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, *or* -re	amēminī
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, *or* -re	amārēminī
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus		sim	sīmus
amāveris	amāveritis	amātus	sīs amātī	sītis
amāverit	amāverint		sit	sint

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem	amāvissēmus		essem	essēmus
amāvissēs	amāvissētis	amātus	essēs amātī	essētis
amāvisset	amāvissent		esset	essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.* amāre, *be thou loved.*
amāte, *love ye.* amāmini, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.* amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*
amātō, *he shall love.* amātor, *he shall be loved.*
amātōte, *you shall love.* ———————
amantō, *they shall love.* amantor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, *to love.* amāri, *to be loved.*
PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.* amātus esse, *to have been loved.*
FUT. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.* amātum īri, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.* PRES. ———————
FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.* GER.[1] amandus, -a, -um, *to be loved.*
PERF. ——————— PERF. amātus, -a, um, *loved, having been loved.*

GERUND.   SUPINE.

N. ——————— ———————
G. amandī, *of loving.* ———————
D. amandō, *for loving.* ———————
Ac. amandum, *loving.* Ac. amātum, *to love.*
Ab. amandō, *by loving.* Ab. amātū, *to love, to be loved.*

[1] Gerundive, sometimes less correctly called *future passive participle.*

512. **Second Conjugation. — Ē-Verbs.**

moneō, *advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.**

INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	

PRESENT.

I advise, etc.		*I am advised*, etc.	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris, *or* -re	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

IMPERFECT.

I was advising, etc.		*I was advised*, etc.	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, *or* -re	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall advise, etc.		*I shall be advised*, etc.	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, *or*-re	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT.

I have advised, I advised, etc.		*I have been (was) advised*, etc.			
monuī	monuimus		sum		sumus
monuistī	monuistis	monitus	es	monitī	estis
monuit	monuērunt, *or* -re		est		sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised, etc.		*I had been advised*, etc.			
monueram	monuerāmus		eram		erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	monitus	erās	monitī	erātis
monuerat	monuerant		erat		erant

<center>FUTURE PERFECT.</center>

<center>*I shall have advised*, etc.   *I shall have been advised*, etc.</center>

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus	erō eris erit	monitī	erimus eritis erunt
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

<center>SUBJUNCTIVE.</center>

<center>PRESENT.</center>

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris, *or* -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

<center>IMPERFECT.</center>

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, *or* -re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

<center>PERFECT.</center>

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	sim sīs sit	monitī	sīmus sītis sint
monueris	monueritis				
monuerit	monuerint				

<center>PLUPERFECT.</center>

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus	essem essēs esset	monitī	essēmus essētis essent
monuissēs	monuissētis				
monuisset	monuissent				

<center>IMPERATIVE.</center>

<center>PRESENT.</center>

monē, *advise thou*.	monēre, *be thou advised*.
monēte, *advise ye*.	monēminī, *be ye advised*.

<center>FUTURE.</center>

monētō, *thou shalt advise*.	monētor, *thou shalt be adv'd*.
monētō, *he shall advise*.	monētor, *he shall be advised*.
monētōte, *you shall advise*.	————
monento, *they shall advise*.	monentor, *they shall be adv'd*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, *to advise.*   monērī, *to be advised.*

PERF. monuisse, *to have ad-*   monitus esse, *to have been*
          vised.   *advised.*

FUT. monitūrus esse, *to be*   monitum īrī, *to be about to be*
          about to advise.   *advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns, -entis, *advising.*   PRES. ————

FUT. monitūrus,   -a,   -um,   GER. monendus, -a, -um, *to*
          about to advise.   *be advised.*

PERF. ————   PERF. monitus, -a, um, *advised,*
                                             having been advised.

GERUND.		SUPINE.
N. ————		————
G. monendī, *of advising.*		————
D. monendō, *for advising.*		————
Ac. monendum, *advising.*		Ac. monitum, *to advise.*
Ab. monendō, *by advising.*		Ab. monitū, *to advise, to be* *advised.*

513.   **Third Conjugation. — E-Verbs.**

regō, *rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.

INDICATIVE.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.
		PRESENT.	
	I rule, etc.		*I am ruled*, etc.
regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris, *or* -re	regiminī
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling, etc.		*I was ruled*, etc.	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris, *or* -re	regēbāminī
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall rule, etc.		*I shall be ruled*, etc.	
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris, *or* -re	regēminī
reget	regent	regētur	regentur

PERFECT.

I have ruled, etc.		*I have been ruled*, etc.	
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus { sum	rēctī { sumus
rēxistī	rēxistis	es	estis
rēxit	rēxērunt, *or* -re	est	· sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled, etc.		*I had been ruled*, etc.	
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus { eram	rēctī { erāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis	erās	erātis
rēxerat	rēxerant	erat	erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have ruled, etc.		*I shall have been ruled*, etc.	
rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus { erō	rēctī { erimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	eris	eritis
rēxerit	rēxerint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris, *or* -re	regāminī
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT.

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris, *or* -re	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerimus	rēctus {	sim	rēctī {	sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis		sīs		sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem	rēxissēmus	rēctus {	essem	rēctī {	essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis		essēs		essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

rege, *rule thou.*   regere, *be thou ruled.*

regite, *rule ye.*   regimini, *be ye ruled.*

FUTURE.

regitō, *thou shalt rule.*   regitor, *thou shalt be ruled.*

regitō, *he shall rule.*   regitor, *he shall be ruled.*

regitōte, *ye shall rule.*   ————

reguntō, *they shall rule.*   reguntor, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, *to rule.*   regī, *to be ruled.*

PERF. rēxisse, *to have ruled.*   rēctus esse, *to have been ruled.*

FUT. rēctūrus esse, *to be about to rule.*   rēctum īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēns, -entis, *ruling.*   PRES. ————

FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, *about to rule.*   GER. regendus, -a, -um, *to be ruled.*

PERF. ————   PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, *ruled, having been ruled.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
N. ————	————
G. **regendī**, *of ruling.*	————
D. **regendō**, *for ruling.*	————
Ac. **regendum**, *ruling.*	Ac.. **rēctum**, *to rule.*
Ab. **regendō**, *by ruling.*	Ab. **rēctū**, *to rule, to be ruled.*

514.   Third Conjugation. — Verbs in -iō.

capiō, *take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
		PRESENT.	
I take, etc.		*I am taken.*	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis, *or*-re	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

		IMPERFECT.	
I was taking, etc.		*I was taken*, etc.	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris, *or* -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

		FUTURE.	
I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken*, etc.	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris, *or* -re	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

PERFECT.
cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc.   captus sum, es, est, etc.

PLUPERFECT.
cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc. captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.
cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.   captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.   capiar, -iāris, *or* -re, -iātur, etc.

IMPERFECT.

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris, *or* -re, -erētur

PERFECT.

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cape, *take thou.*   capere, *be thou taken.*
     capite, *take ye.*   capiminī, *be ye taken.*
FUT. capitō, *thou shalt take,* capitor, *thou shalt be taken,*
     etc.   etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, *to take.*   capī, *to be taken.*
PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken.*   captus esse, *to have been taken.*
FUT. captūrus esse, *to be*   captum īrī, *to be about to be*
     about to take.   *taken.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, *taking.* PRES. ————
FUT. captūrus, *about to take.*   GER. capiendus, *to be taken.*
PERF. ————   PERF. captus, *having been taken.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
G. capiendī, *of taking,*	AC. captum, *to take.*
etc.	AB. captū, *to take, to be taken.*

515.   Fourth Conjugation. — Ī-Verbs.

audiō, *hear.*

Principal Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.**

Indicative.

ACTIVE.   PASSIVE.

PRESENT.

I hear, etc.		*I am heard*, etc.	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris, *or* -re	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, etc.		*I was heard*, etc.	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris, *or* -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall hear, etc.		*I shall be heard*, etc.	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris, *or* -re	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

PERFECT.

I have heard, etc.		*I have been heard*, etc.	
audīvī	audīvimus	audītus { sum	audītī { sumus
audīvistī	audīvistis	es	estis
audīvit	audīvērunt, *or* -re	est	sunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard, etc.		*I had been heard*, etc.			
audīveram	audīverāmus		⎧ eram		⎧ erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis	audītus ⎨ erās		audītī ⎨ erātis
audīverat	audīverant		⎩ erat		⎩ erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have heard, etc.		*I shall have been heard*, etc.			
audīverō	audīverimus		⎧ erō		⎧ erimus
audīveris	audīveritis	audītus ⎨ eris		audītī ⎨ eritis
audīverit	audīverint		⎩ erit		⎩ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, *or* -re	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris, *or* -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverimus		⎧ sim		⎧ sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis	audītus ⎨ sīs		audītī ⎨ sītis
audīverit	audīverint		⎩ sit		⎩ sint

PLUPERFECT.

audīvissem	audīvissēmus		⎧ essem		⎧ essēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis	audītus ⎨ essēs		audītī ⎨ essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		⎩ esset		⎩ essent

<div align="center">IMPERATIVE.</div>

<div align="center">PRESENT.</div>

audī, *hear thou.*   audīre, *be thou heard.*
audīte, *hear ye.*   audīminī, *be ye heard.*

<div align="center">FUTURE.</div>

audītō, *thou shalt hear.*   audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*
audītō, *he shall hear.*   audītor, *he shall be heard.*
audītōte, *ye shall hear.*   ————————
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*   audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

<div align="center">INFINITIVE.</div>

PRES. audīre, *to hear.*   audīrī, *to be heard.*
PERF. audīvisse, *to have heard.*   audītus esse, *to have been heard.*
FUT. audītūrus esse, *to be*   audītum īrī, *to be about to be*
          about to hear.   *heard.*

<div align="center">PARTICIPLES.</div>

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.*   PRES. ————————
FUT. audītūrus, -a, -um, *about*   GER. audiendus, -a, -um, *to*
          to hear.   *be heard.*
PERF. ————————   PERF. audītus, -a, -um, *heard,*
                                           having been heard.

<table>
<tr><td align="center">GERUND.</td><td align="center">SUPINE.</td></tr>
<tr><td>N.   ————————</td><td>————————</td></tr>
<tr><td>G.   audiendī, of hearing.</td><td>————————</td></tr>
<tr><td>D.   audiendō, for hearing.</td><td>————————</td></tr>
<tr><td>Ac. audiendum, hearing.</td><td>Ac. audītum, to hear.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Ab. audiendō, by hearing.</td><td>Ab. audītū, to hear, to be
heard.</td></tr>
</table>

IRREGULAR VERBS.

516. Sum (STEMS **es, fu**), *be.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular.	*Plural.*
sum, *I am.*	sumus, *we are.*
es, *thou art.*	estis, *you are.*
est, *he (she, it) is.*	sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was.*	erāmus, *we were.*
erās, *thou wast.*	erātis, *you were.*
erat, *he was.*	erant, *they were.*

FUTURE.

erō, *I shall be.*	erimus, *we shall be.*
eris, *thou wilt be.*	eritis, *you will be.*
erit, *he will be.*	erunt, *they will be.*

PERFECT.

fuī, *I have been, was.*	fuimus, *we have been, were.*
fuistī, *thou hast been, wast.*	fuistis, *you have been, were.*
fuit, *he has been, was.*	{ fuērunt, *or*
	fuēre, *they have been, were.*

PLUPERFECT.

fueram, *I had been.*	fuerāmus, *we had been.*
fuerās, *thou hadst been.*	fuerātis, *you had been.*
fuerat, *he had been.*	fuerant, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, *I shall have been.*	fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
fueris, *thou wilt have been.*	fueritis, *you will have been.*
fuerit, *he will have been.*	fuerint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.
Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sis	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent

	PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.
fuerim	fuerimus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fueris	fueritis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular.   *Plural.*

es, *be thou.*   este, *be ye.*

FUTURE.

estō, *thou shalt be.*   estōte, *ye shall be.*

estō, *he shall be.*   suntō, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.　　　　PARTICIPLE.

PRES. esse, *to be.*

PERF. fuisse, *to have been.*

FUT. futūrus esse, *to be* futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be. about to be.*

517. possum, posse, potuī, ——, *be able, can.*

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
PRES.	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possis	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT.	poterō	poterimus		
PERF.	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus		

INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse   PERF. potuisse

518. prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *benefit.*

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
PRES.	prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prosimus
	prōdes	prōdestis	prōsis	prōsitis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMP.	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus
FUT.	prōderō	prōderimus		
PERF.	prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
PLUP.	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F. P.	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste   FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōdesse   PERF. prōfuisse

FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um

519. volō, velle, voluī, ——, *be willing, will, wish.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, *be unwilling, will not.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, *be more willing, prefer.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMP.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	maluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMP.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	———	nōli	———
		nōlīte	
FUT.	———	nōlitō, etc.	———

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	———

520. eō, īre, īvi (iī), itūrus, *go.*

    fīō, fierī, factus sum (supplies passive to faciō, *make*),
    be made, become.

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	eō	īmus	fīō	fīmus
	is	ītis	fīs	fītis
	it	eunt	fit	fīunt

INDICATIVE.

IMP.	ībam	fīēbam
FUT.	ībō	fīam
PERF.	iī	factus sum
PLUP.	ieram	factus eram
F. P.	ierō	factus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	eam	fiam
IMPER.	irem	fierem
PERF.	ierim	factus sim
PLUP.	iissem	factus essem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ī	ite		fī	fīte
FUT. ītō	ītōte		——	——
ītō	euntō		——	——

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	īre	fierī
PERF.	iisse	factus esse
FUT.	itūrus esse	factum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	iēns, Gen. euntis	PRES.	——————
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um	GER.	faciendus
PERF.	———————	PERF.	factus

GERUND.	SUPINE.	——•o•——
N. ———————	———————	
G. eundī	———————	
D. eundō	———————	
Ac. eundum	Ac. itum	
Ab. eundō	Ab. itū	

521. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus : *bear, carry, endure.*

INDICATIVE.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES. ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris, *or* -re	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMP.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMP.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
PRES.	fer	ferte	[ferre]	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre	ferrī
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns	PRES.	————
FUT.	lātūrus	GER.	ferendus
PERF.	————	PERF.	lātus

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
N.	————		————
G.	ferendī		————
D.	ferendō		————
Ac.	ferendum	Ac.	lātum
AB.	ferendō	AB.	lātū

RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.* **22.**

2. *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.* **65.**

3. *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.* **37.**

4. *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.* **45.**

5. *A noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same person or thing, is put in the genitive.* **36.**

6. *The partitive genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.* **203.**

7. *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.* **53.**

8. *A predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.* **298.**

9. *The indirect object is put in the dative.* **28.**

10. *The dative is used with* **est, sunt,** *etc., forms of the verb* **sum** *(516), to denote possession, the thing possessed being the subject.* 29.

11. *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, believe, trust, help, and their opposites, also to persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare, and the like, govern the dative.* 372.

12. *Many verbs compounded with* **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** *and* **super,** *govern the dative.* 397.

13. *The dative is used with* **sum** *and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves.* 399.

14. *The gerundive with* **sum** *takes the dative denoting the person who has a thing to do.* **466.**

15. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.* 23.

16. *Names of towns used to express* **place whither** *are put in the accusative without a preposition.* 269.

17. *Extent of* **time** *or* **space** *is expressed by the accusative.* 260.

18. *The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with* **a** *or* **ab.** 76.

19. *The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.* 84.

20. *The* **manner** *of an action is denoted by the ablative, usually with* **cum;** *but* **cum** *may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.* **93.**

21. *The ablative is used to express cause.* **132.**

22. *The ablative or the genitive of a noun may be used with an adjective to describe a person or thing.* **140.**

23. *Time* **when** *or* **within which** *is expressed by the ablative.* **155.**

24. *The ablative is used with verbs, adjectives, and nouns, to denote* **in what respect** *a thing is true.* **168.**

25. *The comparative is followed by the ablative when* **quam** *(than) is omitted.* **194.**

26. *Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.* **210.**

27. *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with* **cum.** **241.**

28. **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** *and their compounds, govern the ablative.* **361.**

29. *The ablative absolute is used to express the time, cause, condition, or some other circumstance of the action of the main verb.* **388.**

30. *Words signifying* **privation, removal,** *or* **separation** *are followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition.* **413.**

31. NAMES OF TOWNS: (1) *Place where is ex- pressed by the locative.* **407.** *See* **180.**

(2) *Place whither is expressed by the accusa- tive without a preposition.* **407.** *See* **269.**

(3) *Place whence is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.* **407.**

32. *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.* **113.**

33. *The subjunctive is used with* **ut** *and* **nē** *to express purpose.* **254.**

34. *The subjunctive is used with* **ut** *and* **ut nōn** *to express result.* **278.**

35. *In a* **cum**-*clause expressing time, the verb is commonly in the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, in the indica- tive.* **382.**

36. *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.* **421.**

37. *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses of purpose, result, characteristic, and cause.* **433.**

38. *The subjunctive is used with* **cum causal** *or* **concessive.** **435.**

39. *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive with or without* **utinam,** (*oh that!*) **441.**

40. *Wishes referring to the future, immediate or more remote, are expressed by the present sub- junctive.* **442.**

41. *Wishes referring to the present are ex- pressed by the imperfect subjunctive.* **442.**

42. *Wishes referring to the past are expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive.* **442.**

43. *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and implying nothing as to fact have the indicative in both clauses.* **450.**

44. *Conditional sentences referring to present or past time and contrary to fact have the subjunctive in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.* **451.**

45. *Conditional sentences referring to future time, if more vivid, take the future or future perfect indicative; if less vivid, take the present subjunctive in both clauses.* **452.**

46. *A primary tense in the main clause is followed by the present or perfect subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a secondary tense by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.* **419.**

47. *The tenses of the infinitive denote present, future, or past time, relatively to the time of the leading verb.* **320.**

48. *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.* **299.**

49. *Indirect statements follow verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving, and are expressed by the infinitive with subject-accusative.* **318.**

50. *The supine in* **um** *is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.* **476.**
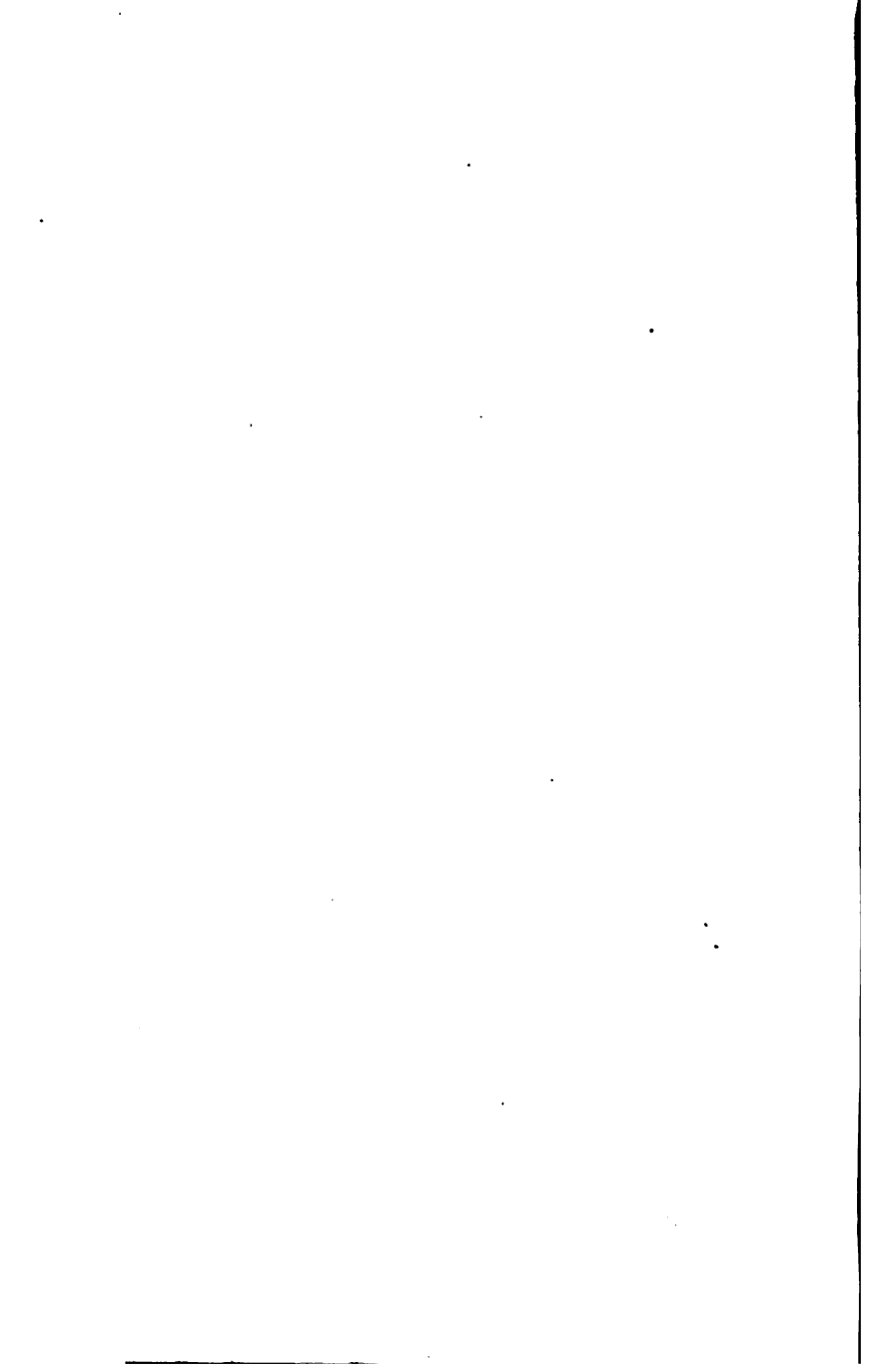
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

This Vocabulary includes all the words of the Reading Lessons.

IN this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets are, in most cases, those which are given in Latin lexicons and special vocabularies as the primitives of those against which they are set. But, except in compounds, and words obviously formed directly from others, it would be more correct to regard the bracketed words as *connected with the others in formation from a common root or stem.* It is on this ground that such instances will be found as cūra referred to cūrō, and cūrō to cūra. Neither is, strictly speaking, derived from the other, but both are formed from the stem cūra.

Words printed in *Gothic Italic* type are at once derivatives and definitions. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in SMALL CAPITALS.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupils should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

ā or ab, prep. w. abl., *from, by.*

ab-dicō, -āre, āvī, -ātus, *reject;* with sē, *resign, abdicate.*

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away, take off; abduct.*

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go from, go off, go away.* (520.)

ab-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, iectus [iaciō], *throw off, throw down.*

abs-tergeō, -ēre, -tersī, -tersus, *wipe off.*

abs-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [teneō], *keep back; refrain from, abstain.*

ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be away, be absent, be distant;* with ā or ab and abl. (516.)

ab-ūtor, -ī, -ūsus sum, *misuse; abuse;* with abl. (361.)

āc, conj., see atque.

ac-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus [ad], *go* or *come near, approach.*

ac-cendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *kindle, inflame.*

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī,——[ad, cadō], *fall upon, fall out, happen.* ACCIDENT.

ac-cipiŏ, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, capiŏ], *(take to), receive,* **accept.**

ac-cūsŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, causa], *accuse.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. *sharp, keen; active, eager.* (163.) ACRID.

acerbus, -a, -um [ācer], *bitter, sour.*

aciēs, -ēī, f. [ācer], *edge ; line of battle.*

ācriter, adv. [ācer], *sharply, eagerly.*

acūtus, -a, -um [acuŏ, *sharpen*], *sharp.*

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, near.*

ad-eŏ, adv. *to this ; so, so very.* Cf. ita, sīc, and tam.

ad-eŏ, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go to, approach, visit.* (520.)

ad-ferŏ (aff-), -ferre, attulī (adt-), adlātus (all-), *bear to, bring.* (521.)

ad-flīgŏ (aff-), -ere, -flīxī, flīctus, *dash at ; weaken,* **afflict.**

ad-iciŏ, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciŏ], *throw to ; add to.*

ad-iuvŏ, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *aid, help.*

ad-ligŏ (all-), -āre, -āvī, ātus, *bind, tie.*

ad-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum (*rise up against*), *attack.*

ad-rēpŏ (arr-), -ere, -sī, ——, *creep towards, steal up.*

ad-ripiŏ (arr-), -ere, -uī, -reptus [rapiŏ], *seize, snatch.*

ad-sīdŏ, -ere, -ēdī, ——, *sit down.*

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī (aff-), -futūrus, *be present, be here;* w. dat. (516.)

adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [adolēscŏ, *grow*], *youth, young person.* ADOLESCENCE. Cf. iuvenis.

adventus, -ūs, m. [adveniŏ, *approach*], *approach, arrival.* ADVENT.

adversus, -a, -um [p. of advertō], *turned towards, opposite, in front.*

aedificium, -ī, n. [aedificō], *building.* EDIFICE.

aedificŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedēs, *house*, faciŏ], *build.* EDIFY.

aedis (ēs-), -is, f. *building ;* plur. *house.*

Aeduī, -ōrum, m. *the Aeduans, a Gallic tribe.*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, weak, feeble.* (500.)

Aegyptus, -ī, f. *Egypt.*

āēr, āeris, m. (acc. āera), *air.*

aestās, -ātis, f. *summer.*

aetās, -ātis, f. *life, age.*

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Africa.*

Āfricānus, -ī, m. [Āfrica], *Africanus, surname of Scipio.*

ager, agrī, m. *field, territory.* (57.)

ag-gredior (adg-), -ī, -gressus sum [ad, gradior, *step*], *approach, attack.*

agitŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of agŏ], *shake, disturb, chase, drive.* AGITATE.

āgnōscŏ, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [ad, (g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize.* Cf. cōgnōscō.

agŏ, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead ; act, do ; celebrate ; pass (life).*

agricola, -ae, m. [ager, colō], *farmer.*

Albānus, -a, -um, adj. *Alban;* as

noun, *inhabitant of Alba, a town in Latium.*

albus, -a, -um, adj. *white.*

Alexander, -drī, m. *Alexander, king of Macedon.*

aliquam-diū, adv. *for a time.*

ali-quandō, adv. [alius], *at some time; formerly, once.* Cf. ōlim.

ali-quantum, -ī, n. [alius], *some, a considerable amount.*

aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron. *some one, some, any.* (308.)

alius, -a, -ud, adj. *another, other;* alius ... alius, *one ... another.* (292.)

alō, -ere, -uī, -tus, or -itus, *nourish, strengthen.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. *the Alps.*

alter, -era, -erum, adj. *the other (of two);* alter ... alter, *the one, ... the other.* (291, 292, a.)

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus], *height.*

altus, -a, -um, adj. *high, deep.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk, take a walk.*

amīcitia, -ae, f. [amīcus], *friendship.*

amīcus, -a, -um, adj. [amō], *friendly;* noun, *friend.*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love, like, be fond of.* (511.)

amplius, adv. comp. *more, longer.*

ancilla, -ae, f. *maid-servant, maid.*

anguis, -is, m. *serpent, snake.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj. *narrow.*

anim-advertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [animus], *turn the mind to, notice.*

animal, -ālis, n. [anima, *breath*], *living being, animal.* (148.)

animus, -ī, m. *mind, soul, spirit.*

annus, -ī, m. *year.* ANNUAL.

ante, prep. w. acc., *before.*

anteā, adv. [ante], *before.*

ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, ——, *go before.*

ante-quam, adv. *sooner than, before.*

antīquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient.* ANTIQUITY. Cf. vetus. (175, 207.)

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *open.*

ap-pellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad], *address, call, name.* APPEAL.

ap-plaudō, -ere, -sī, -sus [ad], *applaud.*

ap-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [ad], *seize, take hold of.*

apud, prep. w. acc., *with, by, near, among.*

aqua, -ae, f. *water.* AQUATIC.

āra, -ae, f. *altar.* Page 8.

arātrum, -ī, n. [arō], *plough.* Page 34.

arbor, -oris, f. *tree.*

arceō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *keep off.*

arcus, -ūs, m. *bow.* (231.) ARC. Page 73.

arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep; difficult, arduous.*

arma, -ōrum, n. [armō], *arms, weapons.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [arma], *arm, equip.*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plough.*

Arpīnum, -ī, n. *Arpinum, a town in Italy.*

ars, artis, f. *art, skill;* plur. *qualities.*

arvum, -ī, n. [arō], *ploughed land, field.*

arx, arcis, f. [arceō], *citadel.* (152.)

Asia, -ae, f. *Asia.*

at, conj. *but.* Cf. sed and autem.

āter, -tra, -trum, adj. *black.* Cf. niger.

Athēna, -ae, f. *Athena,* a goddess.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. *Athens.*

Athēniēnsis, -is, m. [Athēnae], *an Athenian.*

at-que (before vowels and consonants, **āc** before consonants only) [ad], *and also, and especially, and.* Cf. et and -que.

at-tingō, -ere, -tigī, tāctus [ad, tangō], *touch, reach.*

at-tonitus, -a, -um [ad], *thunderstruck, astounded, awe-struck.*

auctōritās, -ātis, f. *authority, dignity.*

audācia, -ae, f. [audāx], *daring, boldness.*

audāx, -ācis, adj. [audeō], *daring, bold.* (163.) AUDACIOUS.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum [audāx], *dare, be bold.* (363, a.)

audiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *hear, listen.* (515.) AUDIENCE.

au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab(s)], *bear off, carry away.* (510.) ABLATIVE.

au-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —— [ab], *run away, escape.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus [auxilium], *increase, enlarge.*

Augustus, -ī, m. *Augustus, title of Caesar Octavianus as emperor.*

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], *of gold, golden.*

auris, -is, f. *ear.*

aurum, ī, n. *gold.*

aut, conj. *or ;* aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*

autem, conj. (never the first word), *but, however, moreover.*

auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], *help, aid, support ;* plur. *auxiliaries.*

avārus, -a, -um, adj. *greedy, rapacious.* AVARICIOUS.

avis, -is, f. *bird.* (148, c.)

avunculus, -ī, m. [dimin. of avus, *grandfather*], (*maternal*) *uncle.*

barba, -ae, f. *beard.*

barbarus, -ī, m. *barbarian.*

beātus, -a, -um, adj. *happy.*

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [bellum], *war, carry on war.* Cf. bellum gerō.

bellum, -ī, n. [bellō], *war.*

bene, adv. [bonus], *well.* (215.)

benignus, -a, -um, adj. [bene, genus] (*of good birth*), *kind, good.* BENIGNANT.

bēstia, -ae, f. *beast.*

bibō, -ere, bibī, ——, *drink.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj. *good.* (207, 500.)

bōs, bovis, m. and f. *ox, cow.* (499.)

bracchium, -ī, n. *arm.*

brevis, -e, adj. *short, brief.*

Britannia, -ae, f. *Britain.*

Brūtus, -ī, m. *Brutus,* a Roman surname.

C., abbreviation for *Gāius.*

cachinnō, -āre, ——, ——, *laugh aloud.* Cf. rīdeō.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall.*

caedēs, -is, f. *laughter, carn*

caedō, -ere *u.*

caenum, -ī, n. *dirt, filth, mire.*

Caesar (C. I.), -aris, m. *Caius Julius Caesar, a famous Roman.*

calcar, -āris, n. [calx, *heel*], *spur.* (148.) Page 186.

calceus, -ī, m. *shoe.* Page 152.

Campānia, -ae, f. *Campania, a district of Italy.*

Campānus, -a, -um, adj. *Campanian.*

canis, -is, m. and f. *dog.*

Cannēnsis, -e, adj. [Cannae], *of Cannae.*

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cantus], *sing.* CHANT.

cantus, -ūs, m. [cantō], *singing, song.* CHANT.

capessō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītūrus [capiō], *take eagerly; resort to.*

capillus, -ī, m. [caput], *hair (of the head).*

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *take, seize, capture.*

captīvus, -ī, m. [capiō], *captive, prisoner.*

Capua, -ae, f. *Capua, a city in Italy.*

caput, -itis, n. *head.* (126.) CAPITAL.

carcer, -eris, m. *prison.*

cārē, adv. [cārus], *dearly.*

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be in want of, lack, want;* with abl.

carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, *pluck, nibble.*

carrus, -ī, m. *wagon, cart, car.*

Carthāgō, -inis, f. *Carthage, a town in Africa.*

Carthāgō Nova, *a town in Spain.*

cārus, -a, -um, adj. *dear, precious.*

Casca, -ae, m. *Casca.*

castra, -ōrum, n. *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], *a falling; chance; misfortune, loss.*

Catilīna, -ae, m. *Catiline, a famous Roman conspirator.*

Catō, -ōnis, m. *Cato, a celebrated Roman censor.*

causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason;* causā (after a genitive), *for the sake.*

celeritās, -ātis, f. [celer, *swift*], *swiftness, speed.*

celeriter, adv. [celer], *swiftly.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal.*

cēna, -ae, f. *dinner.*

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -us, *reckon; think, deem, be of opinion.* Cf. putō. CENSURE.

centēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [centum], *hundredth.*

centum, num. adj., indecl. *hundred.* CENT.

Cerēs, -eris, f. *Ceres, goddess of agriculture.* CEREAL.

certāmen, -inis, n. [certō], *strife, contest.*

certus, -a, -um, adj. *fixed, determined, certain, sure;* certiōrem faciō, *make (one) more certain, inform.*

cerva, -ae, f. *deer, hind.*

Chrīstus, -ī, m. *Christ.*

cibus, -ī, m. *food.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m. *Cicero, a famous Roman orator.*

Cimber, -brī, m. *Cimbrian.*

Cincinnātus, -ī, m. *Cincinnatus, a famous Roman.*

circum, prep. w. acc., *around.*

circum-stŏ, -āre, -stetī, ——, *stand around, surround.*

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *surround ; circumvent.*

citerior, -ius, adj. (no positive), *hither.* (200.)

cīvis, -is, m. and f. *citizen.* (148, c.)

cīvitās, -ātis, f. [cīvis], (*body of citizens*), *state ; citizenship.* CITY.

clādēs, -is, f. *disaster, overthrow, defeat.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of clāmō], *cry out, call out.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry, shout.*

clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō, *shout*], *shout, cry.* CLAMOR.

clārus, -a, -um, adj. *clear, loud ; renowned, famous.*

classis, -is, f. *fleet.*

clausula, -ae, f. [claudō, *close*], *close, conclusion.*

cliēns, -entis, m. *client.* (152.)

coepī, -isse, coeptus (defective ; tenses from present stem wanting), *began.*

cŏ-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [co(m), gnōscō], *learn, recognize, know, understand.* Cf. āgnōscō.

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum [co(m), intensive], *exhort, urge, encourage.*

collis, -is, m. *hill.* Cf. mōns.

colloquium, -ī, n. [colloquor, *converse*], *conversation, colloquy.*

collum, -ī, n. *neck.*

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *care for, cultivate, till ; honor.* Cf. incola, agricola.

columba, -ae, f. *dove.*

com- (col-, con-, cor-, co-), primi-tive form of **cum**, a prefix denoting completeness or union ; sometimes intensive.

comes, -itis, m. and f. [com, eō], *comrade, companion.*

comitātus, -ūs, m. [comes], *company.*

com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *intrust, commit.*

commodē, adv. *properly, suitably.*

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (*put in violent motion*), *shake, disturb, agitate, move.* COMMOTION.

cōmō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, *comb, dress.*

com-pleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *fill out, fill up, cover.*

com-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *seize, catch, grasp ; comprehend.*

com-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [premō], *press together ; check, suppress.*

con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus [com], *grant, allow, concede ; depart, withdraw.*

con-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *rouse up, spur on.* Cf. incitō.

con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *cry out together, shout.*

con-currō, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursus [com], *run together, rush together.*

concursus, -ūs, m. [concurrō], *assault.*

con-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus [com, quatiō, *shake*], *shake violently.*

con-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [com], *conceal, hide.*

cōn-ferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus

(coll-), [com], *bring together, collect*. CONFER.

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [com, faciō], *make, accomplish, carry out, finish ; weaken, wear out*.

cōn-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus [com], *stab, pierce*.

cōn-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, iectus [com, iaciō], *throw together ; throw, put*.

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. [coniūrō, *conspire*], *conspirators*.

con-locō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *place, station*.

con-loquor (coll-), -ī, -locūtus sum [com], *speak together, converse*.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *endeavor, attempt, try*.

cōn-salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *salute cordially, greet*.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m. [cōn-sentiō], *agreement, unanimity, consent*.

cōn-sequor, -ī, -cūtus sum [com], *follow close upon ; follow*.

cōn-serō, -ere, -uī, -sertus [com], *join* ; with **manum**, *fight hand to hand*.

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *preserve, save*.

cōn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus [com], *sit down*.

cōnsilium, -ī, n.[cōnsulō, *consult*], *advice,* counsel, *prudence, wisdom ; plan, design*.

cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus [com, speciō, *look*], *look at attentively ; observe, see, behold*.

cōn-spicor, -ārī, -ātus sum [cōn-spiciō], *get sight of, descry*.

cōnstāns, -antis, adj. [p. of cōn-stō, *stand firm*], *firm, steady*.

cōnstantia,-ae,f. [cōnstāns],*firmness ; constancy*.

cōn-sternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *confound, terrify*.

cōnsul, -ulis, m.[cōnsulō, *consult*], *consul*. (138.)

contentiō, -ōnis, f. [contendō, *strain*], *struggle, exertion*.

contentus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of contineō], *contented ;* w. abl.

con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [com, teneō], *hold together, hold, contain*.

continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contineō], *continuous, successive*.

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against*. CONTRARY.

con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus [com], *come together, assemble ; convene*.

con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com], *call together, summon, convoke*.

cōpia, -ae, f. [com, ops], *abundance, wealth ;* plur. *troops, forces*. COPIOUS.

Corinthus, -ī, f. *Corinth*. (13, 2.)

Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi*.

Cornēlius, -ī, m. *Cornelius, a Roman family name*.

cornū, -ūs, n. *horn*. (230.) Page 130.

corpus, -oris, n. *body*. (138.) CORPSE.

corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus [com, regō], *make straight, reform, correct*.

cor-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [com, rapiō], *seize, take hold of*.

corvus, -ī, m. *raven ; grappling-hook*.

cottīdiē (cot-), adv. [quot, diēs], *daily.*

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *trust, believe ;* w. dat. CREDIT.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make, create ; choose, elect.*

cruentus, -a, -um, adj. [cruor, *blood*], *bloody.*

culpa, -ae, f. [culpō], *blame, fault.* CULPABLE. Cf. vitium.

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [culpa], *blame, find fault with.*

cum, conj. *when ; as, since ; though, although.* (382, 435.)

cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*

cūnae, -ārum, f. plur. *cradle.*

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, ītus, *desire, be eager for.* Cf. volō.

cūr, adv.[quā, rē], *why, wherefore.*

cūra, -ae, f. [cūrō], *care, anxiety.*

Cūriātius, -ī, m. *Curiatius, one of the Curiatii.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cūra], *care for, take care.*

currus, -ūs, m. [currō, *run*], *chariot, car.*

cursus, -ūs, m. [currō], *running.*

custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs], *guard ; custody, prison.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [custōs, *guard*], *guard, protect, defend.*

custōs, -ōdis, m. and f. [custōdiō], *guardian, keeper.*

cymba, -ae, f. *boat.* Page 25.

Dārēus, -ī, m. *Darius, king of Persia.*

dātor, -ōris, m. [dō], *giver.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of* (of time), *in, during.*

dea, -ae, f. [deus], *goddess.* (Page 13, note 5.)

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, *owe, ought.* DEBIT, DEBT.

decem, num. adj., indecl. *ten.*

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus (*separate from*), *decide, settle, determine ; decree.*

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. *tenth.*

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead down, lead off, escort.*

dē-fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tire out, exhaust.*

dē-fendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [dēfēnsor], (*strike off from*), *defend, protect.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. [defendō], *defender, protector.*

dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, weary, very tired.*

de-inde (*from thence*), *then, afterwards.*

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delight.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy.* DELETE.

dē-litēscō, -ere, -lituī, —— [lateō], *hide away, lie hid.*

Delphī, -ōrum, m. *Delphi, a town in Greece.*

dē-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *migrate from ; remove, go away.*

denarius, -ī, m. *denarius, a coin.*

dēnique, adv. *at last, finally.*

dēns, dentis, m. *tooth.*

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put down.*

dē-serō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *abandon, desert.*

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus (*stand off* or *apart*), *leave off, cease ; desist.*

dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be from, be wanting, lack ;* w. dat. (516.)

dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten off, deter.*

deus, -ī, m. *god.* (499.)

dē-vincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victus, *overcome, subdue.*

dexter, -era, -erum (oftener -tra- -trum), adj. *right (hand).*

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, tell, speak ; appoint.*

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dīcō], *chief magistrate, dictator.*

dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], *dictatorship.*

diēs, -ēī, m. and f. *day.* (258.)

dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [dis, facilis, *apart from easy*], *hard, difficult.* (198.)

dīligēns, -entis, adj. *diligent, careful, industrious.*

dīligenter, adv. [dīligēns], *diligently, industriously.*

dīligentia, -ae, f. [dīligēns], *diligence, carefulness, industry.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, contend.* Cf. pūgnō.

dī-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move asunder ; separate, drive away.*

dis-, dī- (a prefix denoting separation), *asunder, apart, in different directions.* Cf. dīmoveō, discēdō, dispertiō, dissimilis.

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *depart, withdraw, go off.*

discō, -ere, didicī, ——, *learn.*

dis-pertiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [partiō, *divide*], *distribute, divide.*

dis-similis, -e, adj. (*apart from like*), *unlike, dissimilar.* (198.)

dis-trahō, -ere, -āxī, -āctus, *pull apart ; perplex, distract.*

diū, adv. *for a long time, long.*

diūtius (comp. of diū), *longer.*

dīvitiae, -ārum, f. [dīves, *rich*], *riches, wealth.*

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give ; put ;* dō poenās, *suffer punishment.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach, show.*

doctor, -ōris, m. [doceō], *teacher.*

dolor, -ōris, m. *pain, grief.* DOLOROUS.

dominus, -ī, m. *lord, master.* (61.) DOMINATE.

domus, -ūs, f. *house, home ;* domī, *at home.* (407, a, 499.) DOMESTIC.

dōnum, -ī, n. [dō], *gift, present.* DONATE.

Drūsus, -ī, m. *Drusus, a Roman.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dubius], *hesitate, doubt.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj. [duo], *doubtful.* DUBIOUS.

ducentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [ducentī], *two hundredth.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo, centum], *two hundred.*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dux], *lead.*

Duīlius (C.), -ī, m. *Caius Duilius, a Roman general.*

dulcis, -e, adj. *sweet, pleasant.* DULCET.

dum, conj. *while, as long as ; until.*

duo, duae, duo, num. adj. *two.* (284.)

duo-dē-trīgintā, num. adj., indecl. *twenty-eight.*

dux, ducis, m. and f. [dūcō],

leader, general. DUKE. Cf.
imperātor.

ĕ, see ex.

ecquid, interrog. adv. *whether
. . . at all.*

ĕ-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *put forth,
raise, utter.*

ĕducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring up,
train, educate.*

ĕ-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead
out, lead forth, bring away.*

ef-ferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex],
bear out, carry forth. (521.)

ego, pers. pron. *I.* (245.)

ĕheu, interj. *alas!*

ēlegantia, -ae, f. *elegance.*

elephantus, -ī, m. *elephant.*

ĕ-lūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *deceive, mock.*

ĕ-mergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *arise, come
forth; emerge.*

ĕ-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, missus, *send
forth, let loose.*

enim, conj. (never the first word),
for.

Ennius, -ī, m. *Ennius, father of
Roman poetry.*

eō, adv. [is], *to that place, thither,
there.*

eō, īre, īvī (iī), itūrus, *go.*   (520.)

epistula, -ae, f. *letter, epistle.*

epulae, -ārum, f. plur. *feast, ban-
quet.*

eques, -itis, m. [equus], *horseman,
knight.*   Page 44.

equitātus, -ūs, m. [eques], (*body
of equites*), *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m. *horse.*

ĕ-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [rapiō],
*snatch out, seize; sē ēripere,
escape.*

ĕrudītus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of ēru-
diō, *train*], *educated, learned.*

et, conj. *and;* et . . . et, *both . . .
and.* Cf. atque, āc, and -que.

etiam, adv. and conj. [et, iam,
and now], *also, even.*

Eurōpa, -ae, f. *Europe.*

ĕ-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *overturn,
destroy.*

ex or ē, prep. w. abl., *out of,
from.*

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. *elevated,
lofty, high.*

ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out,
exclaim.* Cf. clāmitō.

ex-cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think
out, devise, contrive.*

excubiae, -ārum, f. plur. *watch,
watchmen.*

ex-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [causa],
excuse.

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go out, come
out.* (520.) EXIT.

exercitus, -ūs, m. [exerceō, *train*],
(*the thing trained*), *army.*

eximius, -a, -um, adj. *excellent,
remarkable.*

ex-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *arise,
begin.*

ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set
forth, explain, relate.*

ex-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take
by storm, take, capture.* Cf.
oppūgnō.

ex-sistō, -ere, -stitī, ——, *come
forth; arise; be, exist.*

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *await,
wait for, expect.*

ex-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe
out, expire, die.*

ex-stinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctus

ac-cipiŏ, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad, capiō], (*take to*), *receive*, **accept**.

ac-cūsŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad, causa], *accuse*.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj. *sharp, keen ; active, eager*. (163.) ACRID.

acerbus, -a, -um [ācer], *bitter, sour*.

aciēs, -ēī, f. [ācer], *edge ; line of battle*.

ācriter, adv. [ācer], *sharply, eagerly*.

acūtus, -a, -um [acuō, *sharpen*], *sharp*.

ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, near*.

ad-eŏ, adv. *to this ; so, so very*. Cf. ita, sīc, and tam.

ad-eŏ, -īre, -iī, -itus,*go to, approach, visit*. (520.)

ad-ferŏ (aff-), -ferre, attulī (adt-), adlātus (all-), *bear to, bring*. (521.)

ad-flīgŏ (aff-), -ere, -flīxī, flīctus, *dash at ; weaken, afflict*.

ad-iciŏ, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw to ; add to*.

ad-iuvŏ, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *aid, help*.

ad-ligŏ (all-), -āre, -āvī, ātus, *bind, tie*.

ad-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum (*rise up against*), *attack*.

ad-rēpŏ (arr-), -ere, -sī, ——, *creep towards, steal up*.

ad-ripiŏ (arr-), -ere, -uī, -reptus [rapiō], *seize, snatch*.

ad-sīdŏ, -ere, -ēdī, ——, *sit down*.

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī (aff-), -futūrus, *be present, be here ;* w. dat. (516.)

adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f.

[adolēscŏ, *grow*], *youth, young person*. ADOLESCENCE. Cf. iuvenis.

adventus, -ūs, m. [adveniō, *approach*], *approach, arrival*. ADVENT.

adversus, -a, -um [p. of advertō], *turned towards, opposite, in front*.

aedificium, -ī, n. [aedificō], *building*. EDIFICE.

aedificŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedēs, *house*, faciō], *build*. EDIFY.

aedis (ēs-), -is, f. *building ;* plur. *house*.

Aeduī, -ōrum, m. *the Aeduans, a Gallic tribe*.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, weak, feeble*. (500.)

Aegyptus, -ī, f. *Egypt*.

āēr, āeris, m. (acc. āera), *air*.

aestās, -ātis, f. *summer*.

aetās, -ātis, f. *life, age*.

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Africa*.

Āfricānus, -ī, m. [Āfrica], *Africanus, surname of Scipio*.

ager, agrī, m. *field, territory*. (57.)

ag-gredior (adg-), -ī, -gressus sum [ad, gradior, *step*], *approach, attack*.

agitŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of agō], *shake, disturb, chase, drive*. AGITATE.

āgnōscŏ, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [ad, (g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize*. Cf. cōgnōscō.

agŏ, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead ; act, do ; celebrate ; pass (life)*.

agricola, -ae, m. [ager, colō], *farmer*.

Albānus, -a, -um, adj. *Alban ; as*

noun, *inhabitant of Alba, a town in Latium.*

albus, -a, -um, adj. *white.*

Alexander, -drī, m. *Alexander, king of Macedon.*

aliquam-diū, adv. *for a time.*

ali-quandō, adv. [alius], *at some time ; formerly, once.* Cf. ōlim.

ali-quantum, -ī, n. [alius], *some, a considerable amount.*

aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron. *some one, some, any.* (308.)

alius, -a, -ud, adj. *another, other ;* alius . . . alius, *one . . . another.* (292.)

alō, -ere, -uī, -tus, or -itus, *nourish, strengthen.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. *the Alps.*

alter, -era, -erum, adj. *the other (of two);* alter . . . alter, *the one, . . . the other.* (291, 292, a.)

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus], *height.*

altus, -a, -um, adj. *high, deep.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk, take a walk.*

amīcitia, -ae, f. [amīcus], *friend- ship.*

amīcus, -a, -um, adj.[amō], *friend- ly ;* noun, *friend.*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love, like, be fond of.* (511.)

amplius, adv. comp. *more, longer.*

ancilla, -ae, f. *maid-servant, maid.*

anguis, -is, m. *serpent, snake.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj. *narrow.*

anim-advertō, -ere, -tī, -sus [ani- mus], *turn the mind to, notice.*

animal, -ālis, n. [anima, *breath*], *living being, animal.* (148.)

animus, -ī, m. *mind, soul, spirit.*

annus, -ī, m. *year.* ANNUAL.

ante, prep. w. acc., *before.*

anteā, adv. [ante], *before.*

ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, ——, *go before.*

ante-quam, adv. *sooner than, be- fore.*

antīquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante], *old, ancient.* ANTIQUITY. Cf. vetus. (175, 207.)

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *open.*

ap-pellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad], *address, call, name.* APPEAL.

ap-plaudō, -ere, -sī, -sus [ad], *applaud.*

ap-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [ad], *seize, take hold of.*

apud, prep. w. acc., *with, by, near, among.*

aqua, -ae, f. *water.* AQUATIC.

āra, -ae, f. *altar.* Page 8.

arātrum, -ī, n. [arō], *plough.* Page 34.

arbor, -oris, f. *tree.*

arceō, ēre, -uī, ——, *keep off.*

arcus, -ūs, m. *bow.* (231.) ARC. Page 73.

arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep ; diffi- cult, arduous.*

arma, -ōrum, n. [armō], *arms, weapons.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [arma], *arm, equip.*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plough.*

Arpīnum, -ī, n. *Arpinum, a town in Italy.*

ars, artis, f. *art, skill ;* plur. *qualities.*

arvum, -ī, n. [arō], *ploughed land, field.*

arx, arcis, f.[arceō], *citadel.* (152.)

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [frequentative of habeō], *inhabit ; dwell, live.*

Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general.* Page 55.

hasta, -ae, f. *spear.* Page 15.

haud, adv. *not.* Cf. nōn.

Helvētia, -ae, f. *Helvetia.*

Helvētiī, -ōrum, m. the *Helvetians.*

Henna, -ae, f. *Henna, a city of Sicily.*

herī, adv. *yesterday.*

hiberna, -ōrum, n. [hiems], *winter-quarters* (sc. castra). HIBERNATE.

hīc, haec, hōc, demon. pron. *this, this of mine ;* as pers. pron. *he, she, it.* (100.)

hīc, adv. *here, hereupon.*

hiems (hiemps), hiemis, f. *winter; storm.*

hilaritās, -ātis, f. *cheerfulness, hilarity.*

hinc, adv. [hīc], *hence.*

Hispānia, -ae, f. *Spain.*

Hispānus, -ī, m. *a Spaniard.*

historia, -ae, f. *history.*

ho-diē, adv. [hōc, diē], *to-day.*

homō, -inis, m. and f. (*human being*), *man.* (141.)

hōra, -ae, f. *hour.*

Horātius, -ī, m. *Horatius, one of the Horatii.*

horror, -ōris, m. *trembling ; dread, horror.*

hortus, -ī, m. *garden.* (43.)

hospes, -itis, m. and f. *guest-friend.*

hostīlis, -e, adj. [hostis], *hostile.*

hostis, -is, m. and f. *enemy.* (148, 149.) HOSTILE.

humī (loc. of humus, *ground*), *on the ground.*

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —— [iaciō], (*be thrown*), *lie.*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus [iaceō], *throw, cast, hurl.*

iam, adv. *already, now, at last;* nōn iam, *no longer.* Cf. nunc.

iamiam, adv. *already ;* iamiam ventūrus, *just about to come.*

ibi, adv. [is], *in that place, there.*

[īcō], -ere, īcī, ictus, *strike;* foedus īcō, *make a league.*

īdem, eadem, idem, demon. pron. [is], *same.* (303.)

idōneus, -a, -um, adj. *fit, suitable.*

igitur, conj. (seldom the first word), *therefore, then.* Cf. itaque.

īgnis, -is, m. *fire.* (148.) IGNITE.

īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [īgnārus, *ignorant*], *not know, be ignorant of.* Cf. nēsciō. IGNORE.

īlicō, adv. [in, locō], *on the spot, immediately.*

ille, -a, -ud, demon. pron. *that* (*yonder*); as pers. pron. *he, she, it.* (100.)

immānis, -e, adj. *huge, immense.*

im-pār, -paris, adj. [in], *unequal ; not a match for.*

imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō], *commander, general.* EMPEROR.

imperātum, -ī, n. [imperō], *order, command.*

im-perītus, -a, -um, adj. [in], *unskilled.*

imperium, -ī, n. [imperō], *command, rule, power.* EMPIRE.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [imperium], *order, command ;* w. dat. IMPERATIVE.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gain, procure, obtain.*

impetus, -ūs, m. [impetō, *rush upon*], *attack, assault.* IMPETUOUS.

im-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in], *cry out to, beseech, implore.*

im-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [in], *put* or *place upon ; mount ;* w. dat. IMPOSE.

im-pudēns, -entis, adj. [in, *not ;* pudēns, *modest*], *shameless, impudent, bold, brazen.*

in, prep. w. acc., *into, to, against, for ;* w. abl., *in, on.*

in-, prefix, in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. **un-, in-,** *not.*

inānis, -e, adj. *empty, useless.*

in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], *(take in hand), begin.* INCIPIENT.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, excite, incite.*

in-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out ; appeal to.*

in-cōgnitus, -a,-um, adj. *unknown.*

incola, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], *inhabitant.*

in-colō, -ere, -uī, —— [incola], *dwell in, inhabit ; live, dwell.* Cf. habitō and vīvō.

incolumis, -e, adj. *unharmed, safe.*

in-crepō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *sound, resound, clash.*

in-cūriōsus, -a, -um, adj. *careless, negligent.*

inde, adv. [is], *thence.*

in-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *proclaim, appoint.*

indūtus, -a, -um [p. of induō], *clothed, clad.*

in-eō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, *go in, enter ; begin.* (520.)

in-eptus, -a, -um, adj. [aptus, *fit*], *awkward, silly.*

in-ermis, -e, adj.[arma], *unarmed.*

īnferī, -ōrum, m. [īnferus], *inhabitants of the lower world ; the Infernals.*

īnferior, -ius, adj. *lower.* (199.)

īn-ferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus (ill-), (*bear in* or *against*), *cause ;* bellum īnferre, *make war upon ;* w. dat. (521.)

īnferus, -a, -um, adj. *below.* (199.)

īnfēstus, -a, -um, adj. *unsafe ; hostile.*

īnfrā, prep. with acc., *below.*

ingenium, -ī, n. *genius.*

ingēns, -entis, adj. *huge, great.*

in-gredior, -ī, gressus sum [gradior], *step in, enter.*

in-hiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gape at, long for.*

in-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *threw upon, cast upon.*

in-imīcus, -ī, m. *enemy* [amīcus]. (149.) INIMICAL.

in-līdō (ill-), -ere, -sī, -sus, *dash against, crush.*

inopia, -ae, f. [inops, *without resources*], *want, poverty, lack.*

inquit (placed after one or more quoted words), *said he, says he.*

in-ruŏ (irr-), -ere, -uī, ——, *rush upon, make an attack.*

īn-siliŏ, -īre, -uī, —— [saliō], *leap upon.*

īn-struŏ, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *build in, form ; instruct, train ; prepare, provide.*

īnsula, -ae, f. *island.* PENINSULA.

īn-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be in, be among ;* w. dat. and w. *in* and abl. (516.)

in-tāctus, -a, -um, adj. *untouched, uninjured.*

integer, -gra, -grum, adj. *untouched, uninjured ; fresh.*

inter, prep. w. acc., *between, among, amid.*

inter-dum, adv. *sometimes.*

inter-eā, adv. *meanwhile.*

inter-ficiŏ, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *kill, put to death.* Cf. necō and occīdō.

interim, adv. *in the meantime, meanwhile.*

inter-pellŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *entreat, importune.*

inter-rogŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, inquire, question.* (422.) INTERROGATION.

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be among, be present at ;* w. dat. (516.) Cf. adsum.

inter-vāllum, -ī, n. *interval, distance ;* per intervalla, *at intervals.*

intus, adv. [in], *within, inside.*

in-veniŏ, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find, discover.* Cf. reperiō.

in-vicem, adv. *in turn, mutually.*

in-victus, -a, -um, adj. [vincō], *unconquered, invincible.*

in-vocŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call.*

iocus, -ī, m. (plur. iocī and ioca), *joke, jest ;* per iocum, *in jest, for a joke.*

ipse, -a, -um, demon. adj. and pron. *self, very.* (303.)

īra, -ae, f. *anger, wrath, ire.*

is, ea, id, demon. pron. *that ;* as pers. pron. *he, she, it.* (119.)

iste, -a, -ud, demon. pron. *that (of yours).* (303.)

isthmus, -ī, m. *isthm. .:*

ita, adv. *so, thus.* C⁺ ɪdɪ ⱼ ꞔᵵc, tam.

Ītalia, -ae, f. *Italy.*

ita-que, conj. *and so, therefor.:* Cf. igitur.

iter, itineris, n. [eō], *way, journey, march.* (499.) ITINERANT.

iterum, adv. *a second time, again.* ITERATION.

iubeŏ, -ēre, iussī, iūssus, *bid, order, command.* Cf. imperō.

iūgerum, -ī, n. (gen. plur. iūgerūm), *acre, juger.*

iugulum, -ī, n. *throat, neck. .*

iugum, -ī, n. *yoke.*

Iuppiter, Iovis, m. *Jupiter, the supreme deity of the Romans.*(499.)

iūs, iūris, n. *right, justice.*

iūssū, m. only abl. [iubeō], *by command, by order.*

iūstus, -a, -um, adj. *just.*

iuvenis, -e, adj. *young.* Cf. adulēscēns. (207.) JUVENILE.

iuventūs, -ūtis, f. [iuvenis], *body of youth, youth.*

iuvŏ, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid.*

Labiēnus, -ī, m. *Labienus, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.*

labor, -ŏris, m. [labŏrō], *labor, toil.* Cf. opus.

labŏrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [labor], *work, toil; suffer.* ELABORATE.

laetus, -a, -um, adj. *glad, merry.*

lapis, -idis, m. *stone.* (130.) LAPIDARY.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *lurk, lie hid.* LATENT.

Latīnī, -ōrum, m. [Latium], *the Latins.*

lătitūdō, -inis, f. [lātus], *width.* LATITUDE.

lātus, -a, -um, adj. *broad, wide.*

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laus], *praise, laud.*

laus, laudis, f. [laudō], *praise, glory, fame.*

lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, *depute*], *ambassador, deputy, lieutenant.* LEGATE.

legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō], *(a gathering), legion.*

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather; select; read.*

lēnis, -e, adj. *soft, smooth, gentle, mild.* LENIENT.

lēnōcinium, -ī, n. *allurement, charm, personal adornment.*

Lentulus, -ī, m. *Lentulus.*

leō, -ōnis, m. *lion.*

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [levis], *lift up, raise.*

lēx, lēgis, f. *law.* LEGAL.

libenter, adv. [libet, *it pleases*], *willingly, gladly.*

liber, -brī, m. *book.*

līber, -era, -erum, adj. *free.* LIBERAL. (500.)

līberī, -ōrum, m. [līber], *children.* (61.)

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [līber], *set free, free, liberate ;* w. abl. of separation.

lībertās, -ātis, f. [līber], *freedom, liberty.*

licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers. *it is permitted, (one) may.*

līctor, -ōris, m. *lictor, ceremonial attendant of a high officer.*

līgneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum], *wooden.*

lignum, -ī, n. *wood ;* plur. *sticks.*

ligō, -ōnis, m. *mattock, hoe.*

littera, -ae, f. *letter (of the alphabet)* ; plur. *letter, epistle ; despatches.*

locus, -ī, m. (plur. locī and loca), *place, position.* LOCAL.

longē, adv. [longus], *far, far off.*

longus, -a, -um. adj. *long.* LONGITUDE.

lōrum, -ī, n. *thong, strap.*

lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus [lūdus], *play.* INTERLUDE.

lūdus, -ī, m. [lūdō], *game, play.*

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *mourn, lament.*

lūgubris, -e, adj. [lūgeō], *doleful, mournful.*

lūna,-ae, f. [lūx], *moon.* LUNATIC.

lupus, -ī, m. *wolf.*

lūx, lūcis, f. [lūceō, *shine*], *light.*

M., abbreviation for *Mārcus, a Roman first name.*

māchina, -ae, f. *machine, engine, device.*

maestus, -a, -um, adj. *sad.*

magis, adv. [māg(nus)], *more.* (215.)

magister, -trī, m. [māg(nus)], *master, teacher.* (61.)

māgnificus, -a, -um, adj. [māgnus, faciō], *splendid, magnificent.*

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. [māgnus], *greatness, size, magnitude.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj. *great, large.* (207.)

māior, -ius, adj. *greater, larger.* (207.) MAJOR.

male, adv. [malus], *badly, ill.* (215.)

maleficus, -ī, m. [male, faciō], *evil-doer.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, —— [magis, volō], *be more willing, prefer, would rather.* (519.)

malum, -ī, n. [malus], *bad thing, evil.*

malus, -a, -um, adj. *bad, evil.* (207.)

mandātum, -ī, n. [mandō], *order, command.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *stay, remain, wait.* PERMANENT.

manus, -ūs, f. *hand ; force, band.* (229, *a.*) MANUAL.

Mārcus, -ī, m. *Marcus, a Roman first name.*

mare, -is, n. *sea.* (148.) MARINE.

Marius (C.), -ī, m. *Caius Marius, a famous Roman general.*

massa, -ae, f. *mass, lump.*

māter, -tris, f. *mother.* MATERNAL.

mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], *matron, wife, lady.*

māximē, adv. [māximus], *most, especially, greatly.* (215.)

māximus, -a, -um, adj. *greatest.* (207.)

medicus, -ī, m. [medeor, *cure*], *physician.* MEDICINE.

medius, -a, -um, adj. *in the middle, middle.*

melior, -ius, *better.* (207.) AMELIORATE.

memoria, -ae, f. *memory.*

mendāx, -ācis, adj. [mentior, *lie*], *lying, deceitful.*

mēnsa, -ae, f. *table.*

mēnsis, -is, m. *month.*

Mercurius, -ī, m. *Mercury, messenger of the gods.* (59.)

mergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *sink.*

metus, -ūs, m. *fear, dread.*

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron. *my, mine.* (247.)

micō, -āre, -uī, ——, *quiver ; flash, gleam.*

mīles, -itis, m. *soldier.* MILITARY. Page 133.

mīlitāris, -e, adj. [mīles], *military.*

mīlitiae (loc. of mīlitia), *in service, in the field.*

mīlle, num. adj., indecl. in sing. ; in plur., mīlia, -ium, *thousand.* (284, *d.*)

Milō, -ōnis, m. *Milo, a famous Roman.*

Miltiadēs, -is, m. *Miltiades, a Greek general.*

mīmus, -ī, m. *mimic ; farce.*

Minerva, -ae, f. *Minerva, goddess of wisdom.*

minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *threaten.*

minor, -us, adj. *smaller.* (207.)

Minturnae, -ārum, f. plur. *Minturnae, a town in Campania.*

mīrābilis, -e, adj. [mīror], *to be wondered at ; wonderful, extraordinary.* ADMIRABLE.

miror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder,*
-wonder at, admire.

miser, -era, -crum, adj. *wretched,*
unhappy, miserable.

miseria, -ae, f. [miser], *wretched-*
ness, misery.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*
MISSION.

moenia, -ium, n. [mūniō], *walls*
(*of a city*).

molestus, -a, -um, adj. [mōlēs,
pile], *troublesome, tiresome.*
MOLEST.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind,*
advise, warn. (512.) MONITOR.

mōns, montis, m. *mountain, hill.*
Cf. collis.

monumentum, -ī, n. [moneō],
monument. (346, *a.*)

mora, -ae, f. *delay.*

morior, -ī, mortuus sum (fut.
part. moritūrus), [mors], *die.*

mors, mortis, f. (morior), *death.*
MORTAL.

mōs, mōris, m. *manner, habit,*
custom. MORAL.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*

mox, adv. *soon, presently.*

mulier, -eris, f. *woman.* Cf.
fēmina.

multus, -a, -um, adj. *much, many.*
(207.)

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [moenia],
fortify, defend.

mūnus, -eris, n. *duty, office.*

mūrus, -ī, m. *wall.*

Mūsa, -ae, f. *Muse.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change,*
alter. MUTATION.

nam, conj. *for.*

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell, relate,*
narrate.

nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *be born.*

Nāsīca, -ae, m. *Nasica, surname*
of one of the Scipios.

nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor], *race,*
nation.

nātū (abl. of nātus), [nāscor],
by birth, in age.

nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis],
sailor. .

nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis], *naval.*

nāvis, -is, f. *ship.* (149.) NAVAL.
Pages 79, 88.

nē, conj. *that not, that; lest;* w.
hortatory subjunctive, *not.*

-ne, interrog. adv. enclitic. (9, 3.)
Cf. nōnne and num.

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *kill, slay.*
Cf. interficiō and occīdō.

nectō, -ere, nexuī, nexus, *bind,*
weave. CONNECT.

neg-legō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus [nec],
disregard, neglect.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *say not;*
deny, refuse.

nēmō, -inī (dat.), m. and f. [nē,
homō], (no gen. or abl.), *no*
one, nobody.

nē-quāquam, adv. *by no means,*
not at all.

ne-que *or* nec, conj. *and not, nor ;*
neque . . . neque, *neither . .*
nor.

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. *neither*
(*of two*). (291.) NEUTRAL.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj. *black.* Cf.
āter. NEGRO.

nihil, n., indecl. *nothing.* NIHIL-
IST.

Nīlus, -ī, m. the *Nile.*

ni-si, conj. *if not, unless, except.*

nix, nivis, f. *snow.* (499.)

nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō], *well-known, of high birth ; noble.*

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *do harm to, hurt, injure ;* w. dat. Nox-IOUS. Cf. obsum.

Nōla, -ae, f. *Nola, a town in Campania.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——— [nē, volō], *be unwilling, will not, not wish.* (519.)

nōmen, -inis, n. [nōscō], *(that by which a thing is known), name.* NOMINAL.

nōn, adv. [nē, ūnum], *not.*

nōn-ne, interrog. adv. expecting an affirmative answer, *not.* Cf. -ne and num.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn, know.* P. nōtus, -a, -um, as adj. *known.*

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron. *our, ours.* Nostrī, *our men.*

novus, -a, -um, adj. *new.* NOV-ELTY.

nox, noctis, f. *night.* (152.) NOC-TURNAL.

nūbēs, -is, f. *cloud.* (148.)

nūdus, -a, -um, adj. *unclothed, stripped; nude.*

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. [nē, ūllus], *no, none, no one.* (291.) NUL-LITY.

num, interrog. adv. expecting a negative answer, *whether.* Cf. nōnne and -ne.

numerus, -ī, m. *number.*

numquam, adv. [nē, umquam], *never.*

nunc, adv. *now.* Cf. iam.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntius], *report, announce.*

nūntius, -ī, m. [nūntiō], *bearer of news, messenger.*

nūper, adv. [for noviper; novus], *recently, lately.*

Ō, interj. *O, Oh !*

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

ob-eō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, *go to meet ; perish, die.* (520.)

ob-linō, -ere, -lēvī, -litus, *daub, smear, defile.*

oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, *forget.* OBLIVIOUS.

obses, -idis, m. and f. [ob, sedeō, sit], *(one who sits or remains as a pledge), hostage.*

ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, ———, *be against, be opposed to ; injure ;* w. dat. (516.) Cf. noceō.

ob-temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *comply with, yield to ;* w. dat.

obviam, adv. *in the way ;* obviam fīō, *meet ;* w. dat.

ob-volvō, -ere, -ī, -volūtus, *wrap around, cover up.*

oc-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ob, caedō, *cut*], *cut down, kill.* Cf. necō and interficiō.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob, capiō], *take possession of, seize ; occupy.* Cf. potior.

oc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [ob], *run to meet ; meet, fall in with.*

Ocelum, -ī, n. *Ocelum, a town in Hither Gaul.*

of-fendō, -ere, -dī, -sus [ob], *strike against ; come upon, find.*

officium, -ī, n. [opus, faciō], *ser-vice, kindness.*

ōlim, adv. [olle, old form of ille], (*at that time*); *formerly, once ; once upon a time.* Cf. aliquandō.

omnis, -e, adj. *whole, all, every.* Cf. tōtus.

onus, -eris, n. *load, burden.*

onustus, -a, -um, adj. [onus], *laden, loaded.*

opera, -ae, f. [opus], *labor, care ;* operam dō, *try.* Cf. labor.

oppidānus, -ī, m. [oppidum], *townsman.*

oppidum, -ī, n. *town.*

op-pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob], *attack, assault, besiege.* Cf. ex-pūgnō.

[ops], opis, f. *aid, help.*

optimus, -a, -um, adj. *best.* (207.) OPTIMIST.

opus, -eris, n. *work, labor.* Cf. labor.

ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō, *speak*], *orator.*

orbis, -is, m. *circle, orb ;* orbis terrārum, *earth, world.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [ōrnō], (*that which adorns*),*ornament, jewel.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *adorn, ornament, deck.*

os-tendō, -ere, -dī, -tus [ob(s)], *stretch out ; show, display.*

ōtium, -ī, n. *leisure, idleness.*

ovis, -is, f. *sheep.*

ovō, -āre, ——, ——, *exult ; triumph.*

ōvum, -ī, n. *egg.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pāx], *make quiet, subdue.* Cf. vincō.

Padus, -ī, m. *the Po,* a river of Italy.

paene, adv. *nearly, almost.*

paenitentia, -ae, f. *repentance, penitence.*

palūs, -ūdis, f. *swamp, marsh.*

pār, paris, adj. *equal.*

parcō, -ere, pepercī (parsī), par-sus, *spare ;* w. dat.

parēns, -entis, m. and f. *parent.* (152, *a.*)

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, (*come forth, appear*), *be obedient to, obey;* w. dat.

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, bear ; lay.*

Parmeniō, -ōnis, m. *Parmenio,* one of Alexander's generals.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get ready, prepare for.*

pars, partis, f. *part, share.* PARTIAL.

parvus, -a, -um, adj. *small, little.* (207.)

pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed, tend ; pasture.*

passus, -ūs, m. [pateō], (*a stretch-ing out of the feet in walk-ing*), *step, pace ;* mīlle passuum, *mile.*

pater, -tris, m. *father.* (138.) PATERNAL.

patienter, adv. [patiēns,*patient*], *patiently, with patience.*

patientia, -ae, f. [patior, *bear*], *patience.*

patria, -ae, f. [patrius, sc. terra ; pater], *fatherland, native land, country.* PATRIOTISM.

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, little.* PAUCITY.

paulō, adv. [paulus], *by a little, little.*

paulum, adv. [paulus], *a little, somewhat.*

pāx, pācis, f. (no gen. plur.), *peace.* PACIFY.

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make a mistake, commit (a fault), sin.*

pectus, -oris, n. *breast.*

pecūnia, -ae, f. [pecus, *cattle*], *money.* PECUNIARY.

pedes, -itis, m. [pēs], *foot-soldier.*

peditātus, -ūs, m. [pedes], *infantry.*

pēior, -ius, adj. *worse.* (207.)

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive away; repel.*

pēnsum, -ī, n. [pendō, *weigh*], *(what is weighed out, e.g. wool, as a task for spinning), task; lesson, exercise.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through, by, by means of, on account of.*

pēra, -ae, f. *bag, wallet.*

per-agrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ager], *wander through, pass over, traverse.*

per-contor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ask, inquire.*

per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *lose.*

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *spread abroad.* (521.)

per-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *accomplish; perfect.*

per-fruor, -ī, -frūctus sum, *enjoy thoroughly, enjoy;* w. abl.

perīculum, -ī, n. *trial, attempt; risk, danger, peril.*

perītus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of perior, *try*], *(having tried), skilful.*

per-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus,

allow, grant, suffer, permit; w. dat.

Persae, -ārum, m. *the Persians.*

per-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

per-stō, -stāre, -stitī, stātūrus, *stand fast, persist.*

per-stringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictus, *bind closely; affect deeply, thrill.*

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade;* w. dat.

per-terreō, -ēre, ——, -itus, *thoroughly frighten.*

pertinācia, -ae, f. *perseverance; obstinacy, pertinacity.*

pēs, pedis, m. *foot.* (130.) PEDAL.

pessimus, -a, -um, adj. *worst.* (207.) PESSIMIST.

petō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *seek, demand, beg; attack.* PETITION. Cf. rogō.

pharetra, -ae, f. *quiver.*

Philotīmus, -ī, m. *Philotimus.*

piger, -gra, -grum, adj. *slow, lazy.*

pigritia, -ae, f. [piger], *laziness, sloth.*

pīlum, -ī, n. *javelin.* Page 102.

placeō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *please;* w. dat.

plāga, -ae, f. *stroke, blow, thrust.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f. [plānus, *even, level*], *(a flatness), level ground, plain.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. *most, very many.* (207.)

plūs, plūris, adj. *more.* (208.)

Plūto, -ōnis, m. *Pluto, god of the lower world.*

pōculum, -ī, n. *cup, bowl.* Page 69.

poena, -ae, f. [pūniō], *quit-money; fine, punishment.* PENAL.

Poenus, -ī, m. *a Carthaginian.*

poēta, -ae, m. *poet.*

polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, *promise.*

Pompēius, -ēī, m. *Pompey, a famous Roman general.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, set, pitch (camp).* POSITION.

pōns, pŏntis, m. *bridge.*

Popēdius, -ī, m. *Popedius.*

populus, -ī, m. *people.*

Porcius, -ī, m. *Porcius, family name of Cato.*

porta, -ae, f. *gate, door.* PORTAL.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry, bring.* Cf. ferō and vehō.

portus, -ūs, m. *harbor, port.* (231.)

possum, posse, potuī, —— [potis, *able,* sum], *be able, can;* plūrimum posse, *be very powerful, have most influence.* (296, 517.)

post, prep. w. acc., *after, behind;* as adv., *afterwards.*

post-eā, adv. *afterwards.*

[posterus], -a, -um, adj. [post], *following, next.* (199.)

post-quam, conj. *after.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum [potis, *able*], *become master of, get, get possession of;* w. gen. or abl.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prae, habeō], *hold forth, offer, furnish; cause, render.*

prae-cinō, -ere, -cinuī, —— [canō, *sing*], *play before.*

prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj. *very splendid, glorious.*

praeda, -ae, f. *booty, spoil, prey.* PREDATORY.

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prae, dicō, -āre, *make known*], *proclaim, boast.*

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry before.* (521.)

prae-lūceō, -ēre, -xī, ——, *shine before, light the way before.*

praemium, -ī, n. *reward, prize.* PREMIUM.

praesidium, -ī, n. [prae, sedeō, *sit before*], *defense, help, protection.*

prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, *stand out, surpass, be superior to.*

prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, ——, *be before, be at the head of, command;* w. dat. (516.)

praeter, prep. w. acc., *beyond, besides, except.*

praetextus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of praetexō, *fringe*], *bordered;* toga praetexta, *toga with purple border,* worn by the higher magistrates and by free-born children. Page 191.

prātum, -ī, n. *meadow.*

pretiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [pretium, *price*], *precious.*

[prex], precis, f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj. *first, foremost.* (200.) PRIME.

prīnceps, -cipis, m. [prīmus, capiō], *(taking the first place), chief, leader.* (126.) PRINCE.

prius, adv. [prior], *before, sooner, previously.*

prius-quam, conj. *sooner than, before.*

prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in behalf of, for; considering.*

prō, interj. *O!*

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, ——, *go forward, advance, proceed.* Cf. prōgredior.

procul, adv. *far, afar off.*

proelium, -ī, n. *battle, combat.* Cf. pūgna.

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring forth.* (521.)

proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, *set out, march, go.* Cf. exeō.

prō-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum [gradior, *step*], *go forward, advance, progress.* Cf. prōcēdō.

prope, prep. w. acc., *near, near to;* adv. *close at hand, nearly.*

properē, adv. *hastily, quickly.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten.*

propior, -ius, adj. [prope], *nearer.* (200.)

propius, adv. [prope], *nearer.*

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put before, set forth; make known, declare.* PROPOSE.

prōpositum, -ī, n. [prōpōnō], *purpose, design, resolution.* PROPOSITION.

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

Prōserpina, -ae, f. *Proserpine, daughter of Ceres.*

prō-siliō, -īre, -uī, —— [saliō], *leap forward.*

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, ——, *be before, be useful to, benefit;* w. dat. (518.)

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province.*

proximus, -a, -um, adj. *nearest, next.* (200.) PROXIMITY.

prūdēns, -entis, adj. [for prōvi-

dēns], *wise, sagacious, knowing, prudent.* (163.)

prūdentia, -ae, f. [prūdēns], *foresight, sagacity, wisdom, prudence.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus], (*pertaining to the people*), *public.*

Pūblius, -ī, m. *Publius, a Roman first name.*

puella, -ae, f. [dimin. of puer], *girl, maiden.*

puer, -erī, m. *boy, child.* (57, 61.) PUERILE.

puerulus, -ī, m. [dimin. of puer], *little boy.*

pūgiō, -ōnis, m. *short dagger.*

pūgna, -ae, f. [pūgnō], *battle, contest.* Cf. proelium. PUGNACIOUS.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pūgna], *fight.* Cf. dīmicō.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. *beautiful, fair, pretty.*

pulvis, -eris, m. *dust.*

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. *Carthaginian.*

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [poena], *punish.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe, reckon.* Cf. reor.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m. *Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *seek, ask, inquire.* (422.)

quaesō (-ere), (used only in ind. pres. 1st sing. and plur.), [quaerō], *beg, pray.*

quam, adv. *than.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [quam],

how great, how much ; as great as, as much as.

quā-rĕ, adv. (*on account of which thing*), *wherefore.*

qua-si, adv. *as if.*

quater, num. adv. [quattuor], *four times.*

quattuor, num. adj., indecl. *four.*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and.* Cf. et, atque, and āc.

quī, quae, quod, rel. and adj. pron. *who, which, what, that.* (110.)

quia, conj. *because.* Cf. quod.

quīdam, quaedam, quod- or quiddam, indef. pron. *certain, a certain one, a.* (308.)

quidem, adv. (never the first word), *indeed, certainly, in truth ;* nē . . . quidem, *not . . . even.*

quīlibet, quaelibet, quod- or quidlibet, indef. pron. *any one* (you please). (308, *b.*)

Quīnctilius, -ī, m. *Quinctilius, family name of Varus.*

Quīnctius, -ī, m. *Quinctius, family name of Cincinnatus.*

quīndecim, num. adj., indecl. *fifteen.*

quīnquāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [quīnque], *fifty.*

quīnque, num. adj., indecl. *five.*

quis or **quī,** quae, quid or quod, interrog. pron. and adj. *who ? which ? what ?* (105.)

quisquam, quidquam (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron. *any, any one* (*at all*). (308, *b.*)

quisque, quaeque, quid- or quodque, indef. pron. *each one, each, every.* (308, *b.*)

quī-vīs, quaevīs, quod- or quīdvīs, indef. pron. *any one* (you please). (308, *b.*)

quō, adv. [quī], *whither, where.*

quod, conj. *because.* Cf. quia.

quoque, conj. (after an emphatic word), *also, too.*

quot, interrog. and rel. adj., indecl. *how many ? as many as.*

quot-annīs, adv. *every year, yearly.*

Racilia, -ae, f. *Racilia.*

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *seize and carry off ; snatch, drag.*

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], *take back, receive, recover.* Sē recipere, *withdraw, retreat, betake one's self.*

re-creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [creō, *make*], *refresh, recreate.*

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [causa], *decline, refuse.*

red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [re], *give back, return.*

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus [re(d)], *go back, return.* (520.)

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead back, bring back.* REDUCE.

rēgīna, -ae, f. [regō], (*the ruling one*), *queen.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [rēgnum, rēx], *be king ; rule, reign.*

rēgnum, -ī, n. [rēgnō, rēx], *kingdom, throne.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [rēx], *rule.* REGENT.

re-linquō, -ere, -līquī, -līctus, *leave behind, leave, abandon.* RELINQUISH.

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back, give up.* REMIT.

rēmus, -ī, m. *oar.*

re-nuō, -ere, -uī, ——, *nod backward; deny, refuse.*

reor, rērī, rātus sum, *reckon, think.* Cf. putō.

re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertus [pariō, *procure*], *find, discover, ascertain.*

re-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back, win, gain.* Cf. referō. REPORT.

re-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (*count over*), *reckon, think over.*

rēs, reī, f. *thing, event, circumstance, affair* (258); rēs pūblica, *republic, state, commonwealth.*

re-spiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [speciō], *look back.*

re-spondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus (*promise in return*), *answer, reply, respond.*

re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō], *place*], *replace, restore.*

re-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, ——, *come back, return.*

re-vertor, -ī, -ī, -sus (deponent in pres., imp., and fut.), *turn back, return.* REVERT.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call back, recall ; revoke.*

rēx, rēgis, m. [regō], (*ruler*), *king.* (126.) REGAL.

Rhēnus, -ī, m. *the Rhine.*

rictus, -ūs, m. [ringor, *open the mouth*], *jaws wide open, jaws.*

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh.* Cf. cachinnō. DERIDE.

rōbur, -oris, n. *oak; strength.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, question.*

Rōma, -ae, f. *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -ī, m. [Rōma], *a Roman.*

Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus, first king of Rome.*

rosa, -ae, f. *rose.*

rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, *gnaw*], *beak of a vessel.* ROSTRUM. Page 39.

rūrī (loc. of rūs), *in the country.*

rūs, rūris, n. *the country.* (269, *a.*)

rūsticus, -ī, m. [rūs], *countryman, peasant.* RUSTIC.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. the *Sabines.*

saepe, adv. *often, frequently.*

sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow.*

salūs, -ūtis, f. *safety, welfare.* SALUTARY.

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [sapiō, *be wise*], *wise, sensible.*

schola, -ae, f. *school.*

scientia, -ae, f. [sciō], *knowledge, skill.*

sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus, *know, know how.* SCIENCE.

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m. *Scipio, a famous Roman general.* Page 55.

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.* SCRIPTURE.

scrīptor, -ōris, m. [scrībō], *writer, author.*

scūtum, -ī, n. *shield.* Page 76.

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], *following, next; second.*

sed, conj. *but.* Cf. autem.

sēmentis, -is, f. *a sowing.*

semper, adv. *always, ever.*

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [semper], *everlasting.*

senātor, -ōris, m. [senex], *senator.*

senātus, -ūs, m. [senex], *council of elders, senate.*

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], *old age.*

senex, senis, adj. *old;* noun, *old man.* (211, 499.) SENILE.

sententia, -ae, f. [sentiō], *opinion; purpose.*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, know* (*by the senses*), *see, perceive.*

septem, num. adj., indecl. *seven.*

septen-decim, num. adj., indecl. [decem], *seventeen.*

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [septuāgintā], *seventieth.*

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, *follow.*

sermō, -ōnis, m. *speech, conversation.* SERMON.

serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, *sow.*

serta, -ōrum, n. [serō, *plait*], *garlands, wreaths of flowers.*

sērus, -a, -um, adj. *late.*

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, keep, preserve.*

servus, -ī, m. [serviō], *slave, servant.*

sex, num. adj., indecl. *six.*

sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl. [sex], *sixty.*

sextus, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], *sixth.*

Sextus, -ī, m. *Sextus, a Roman first name.*

sī, conj. *if, whether.*

sīc, adv. *so, thus.* Cf. adeō, ita, and tam.

Sicilia, -ae, f. *Sicily.*

sīgnum, -ī, n. *mark, sign, signal.* Page 105.

silva, -ae, f. *wood, forest.* SILVAN.

similis, -e, adj. [simul], *like, resembling, similar.* (198.)

simul, adv. [similis], *at the same time.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singulī, -ae, -a, adj. *one at a time, one on each side, single, separate.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. *left* (*hand*). SINISTER.

Sōcratēs, -is, m. *Socrates, a famous Greek philosopher.*

sōl, sōlis, m. (no gen. plur.), *sun.* SOLAR.

Sōl, Sōlis, m. *the Sun-god.*

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed, be wont.* (362, a.)

solitus, -a, -um, adj. [soleō], *usual, customary.*

sōlum, adv. [sōlus], *alone, only.*

sōlus, -a, -um, adj. *alone, single; sole.* (291.)

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose, loosen; break.* SOLVE.

somnus, -ī, m. *sleep.*

spargō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *strew, scatter.* SPARSE.

spatium, -ī, n. *room, space.*

speciēs (-ēī), f. *sight, appearance, pretense.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [speciō, *look*], *look at, behold, witness.* SPECTACLE.

speculum, -ī, n. *looking-glass, mirror.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs], *hope, hope for.*

spēs, speī, f. [spērō], *hope.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.*

statim, adv. [stō], (*standing*

there), *on the spot, immediately, at once.*

statua, -ae, f. [statuō, *set*], (*the thing set up*), *statue.*

statūra, -ae, f. [stō], *stature.*

status, -ūs, m. [stō], *station, position, condition.*

stō, stāre, stetī, status, *stand.*

strepitus, -ūs, m. *din, applause.*

stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus, *draw tight; draw.*

studeō, -ēre, -uī, ——— [studium], *be eager, strive earnestly, study.*

studium, -ī, n. [studeō], *zeal, eagerness; study.*

stultus, -a, -um, adj. *foolish.*

sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., *under, up to.*

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go under* or *up to, enter; undergo.* (520.)

subitō, adv. [subitus], *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

subitus, -a, -um, adj. [subeō], *sudden.*

sub-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let down; let grow.*

sub-siliō, -īre, -uī, ——— [saliō, *leap*], *jump up.*

sub-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus (*come to one's relief*), *help, aid, assist.*

suc-currō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [sub], (*run up to*), *help, aid, succor.*

sūdor, -ōris, m. *sweat.*

suī, reflex. pron. *of himself* (*herself, itself, themselves*). (245.)

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be, exist.* (516.)

summus, -a, -um, adj. *highest, greatest.* (199.) CONSUMMATE.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, take up; assume.*

super, prep. w. acc. and abl., *over, above, upon.*

super-iaciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw over, cast upon.*

superior, -ius, adj. *higher, superior.* (199.)

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [super], *pass over; surpass, outdo, overcome, conquer.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, ———, *be over, be left over; survive.* (516.)

superus, -a, -um, adj. [super], *above.* (199.)

supplicātiō, -ōnis, f. [supplicō, *kneel down*], *supplication; thanksgiving.*

suprēmus, -a, -um, adj. *last.* (199.)

sus-pendō, -ere, -dī, -pēnsus [sub, pendō, *hang*], *hang up, hang, suspend.*

su-spicor, -ārī, -ātus sum [suspiciō, *look askance at*], *suspect, mistrust.*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [sub, teneō], *hold up, bear, endure; sustain.*

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron. reflex. [suī], *his, her, hers, its, theirs, their.* (247.)

T., abbreviation of *Titus.*

talentum, -ī, n. *talent, a sum of money* ($1132). [ita, and sīc.

tam, adv. *so, so much.* Cf adeō,

tamen, adv. *yet, but, nevertheless.*

tandem, adv. [tam], (*just so far*), *at length, finally.*

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.* TANGENT.

tantum, adv. [tantus], *only.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj. *so great, such.*

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delay, hinder.*

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover.*

tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon.*

temerē, adv. *rashly, inconsiderately.*

templum, -ī, n. *temple.* Page 93.

tempus, -oris, n. *time.* TEMPORAL.

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *hold, keep, have.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj. *soft, delicate, tender.*

tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *try, attempt.*

ter, num. adv. [trēs], *three times, thrice.*

Terentia, -ae, f. *Terentia, Cicero's wife.*

tergum, -ī, n. *back.*

ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [trēs], *three each, three on each side, three.*

terra, -ae, f. *earth, land.* TERRACE.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [terror], *frighten, alarm, terrify.*

terrestris, -e, adj. [terra], *of the land, land-.* TERRESTRIAL.

territus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of terreō], *frightened.*

terror, -ōris, m. [terreō], *terror, alarm.*

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj. [trēs], *third.*

testūdō, -inis, f. [testa, *shell*], *tortoise ; shed* or *covering to protect besiegers, testudo.* Page 148.

Themistoclēs, -is, m. *Themistocles, a famous Athenian.*

Tiberis, -is, m. (acc. in -im), *the Tiber.*

Tiberius, -ī, m. *Tiberius, a Roman first name.*

tībīcen, -inis, m. [tībia, *pipe,* canō, *sing*], *piper.*

Tīcīnus, -ī, m. *the Ticinus, a river of Italy.*

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *fear, be afraid of.* TIMID.

Titus, -ī, m. *Titus, a Roman first name.*

toga, -ae, f. *toga.* Page 191.

togātus, -a, -um, adj. [toga], *clad in the toga.*

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bear, endure.* TOLERATE.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *raise, pick up.*

tōnsor, -ōris, m. [tondeō, *shear*], *barber.*

tot, adj., indecl. *so many.* Cf. quot.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj. *whole, all, entire.* (291.) TOTAL.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, drag.*

trā-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [trāns, iaciō], *throw across, pierce.*

Trallēs, -ium, f. *Tralles, a town in Asia.*

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj. *calm, tranquil.*

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across, beyond, over, the other side of.*

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go over, cross.* (520.) TRANSIENT.

trans-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [agō], *drive through ; finish, transact.*

tre-decim, num. adj. [trēs, decem], *thirteen.*

tremō, -ere, -uī, ———, *shake, tremble.*

trēs, tria, num. adj. *three.* (284.)

trigeminī, -ōrum, m. *triplets.*

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl. [trēs], *thirty.*

trīstis, -e, adj. *sad, gloomy.*

triumphālis, -e, adj. [triumphus], *triumphal, having enjoyed a triumph.*

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [triumphus], *celebrate a triumph.*

triumphus, -ī, m. [triumphō], *triumph.*

trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *kill.*

tū, pers. pron. *thou, you.* (245.)

tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet.* (19.) Page 13.

tubicen, -inis, m. [tuba, canō, sing], *trumpeter.*

tugurium, -ī, n. *hut, cottage.*

Tullus Hostīlius, -ī, m. *Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.*

tum, adv. *at that time, then.*

tumultus, -ūs, m. *uproar, confusion, tumult.*

tunc, adv. [tum], *at that time, then.*

turpis, -e, adj. *ugly, foul; base, disgraceful, shameful.*

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron. *thy, thine; your, yours* (of only one person). (247.)

ubi, adv. *where, when.*

ūllus, -a, -um, adj. [for ūnulus, dimin. of ūnus], *any, any one.* (291.)

ūlterior, -ius, adj. (no positive), *further.* (200.)

ūltimus, -a, -um, adj. *furthest, last.* (200.) ULTIMATE.

umbra, -ae, f. *shade.* UMBRELLA.

umerus, -ī, m. *shoulder.*

unde, adv. *whence.*

undique, adv. *from all parts, on all sides, everywhere.*

ūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus], *only.*

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj. *one; alone.* (284.)

urbs, -is, f. *city.* (152.) SUB-URBS.

ūsus, -ūs, m. *use, benefit.*

ut or **utī**, adv. and conj. *how, as, when; that, in order that, so that.*

uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron. *which (of two)?* (291.)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each (of two), both.* (291.)

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor], *useful, advantageous.* UTILITY.

uti-nam, adv. *would that! O that! I wish that.*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ;* w. abl. (361.)

utrimque, adv. *on both sides.*

ūva, -ae, f. *grape, bunch of grapes.*

uxor, -ōris, f. *wife.*

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. *empty, vacant, destitute.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be strong, be in good health;* valē, *farewell, good-bye.*

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō], *state of health, health.*

validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], *strong, stout, sturdy.* VALID.

Vārus, -ī, m. *Varus, one of Augustus's generals.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vāstus, *waste, desolate*], *lay waste, ravage.*

vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, *carry, draw, convey;* pass. *ride.* VE-HICLE.

vēlōcitās, -ātis, f. [vēlōx], *swiftness, velocity.*

vel-ut, adv. *just as.*

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnor, *hunt*], *hunter.*

venēnum, -ī, n. *poison.* VENOM.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come.*

ventus, -ī, m. *wind.*

venustus, -a, -um, adj. *charming, beautiful, graceful.*

vēr, vēris, n. *spring.* VERNAL.

verbum, -ī, n. *word.* VERB.

Vergilius, -ī, m. *Vergil, a famous Roman poet.*

vēritās, -ātis, f. [vērus], *truth, verity.*

vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn, change.*

vērus, -a, -um, adj. *true, real.*

Vesta, -ae, f. *Vesta, a goddess.*

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron. *your, yours* (of more than one person). (247.)

vestīmentum, -ī, n. [vestiō], *clothing.*

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [vestis, *garment*], *clothe.*

vetus, -eris, adj. *old.* (175, 207, 211.) VETERAN.

vēxillum, -ī, n. *signal-flag.*

via, -ae, f. *way, road, street.*

vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj. [vīcus, *village*], *near, neighboring;* as a noun, *neighbor.* VICINITY.

victor, -ōris, m. [vi(n)cō], *conqueror, victor.* (138.)

Victōria, -ae, f. *Victoria.*

victōria, -ae, f. [victor], *victory.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see, perceive;* pass. *be seen, seem.* VISION.

vīgintī, num. adj., indecl. *twenty.*

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat.*

vīnum, -ī, n. *wine.*

vir, virī, m. *man, hero.* (57, 141.)

virtūs, -ūtis, f. [vir], *manliness, courage, bravery; virtue.*

vīs, vīs, f. (gen. and dat. rare), *strength, power.* (499.)

vīta, -ae, f. [vīvō], *life;* vītam agō, *pass life.* VITAL.

vītis, -is, f. *vine.*

vitium, -ī, n. [vītis], (*a moral twist*), *fault, blemish, vice.* Cf. culpa.

vituperō, -āre, -āvī, ——, *blame, censure.* Cf. culpō. VITU-PERATION.

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, ——, *live.* Cf. habitō and incolō. VIVID.

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [vīvō], *alive, living.*

vix, adv. *hardly, with difficulty.*

vōci-feror, -ārī, -ātus sum [vōx, ferō], *cry out, exclaim; vociferate.*

vocō, -āre, āvī, -ātus [vōx], *call.*

volō, velle, voluī, ——, *wish, be willing, desire, intend.* (519.)

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly.*

Volscī, -ōrum, the *Volscians.*

voluptās, -ātis, f. [volō], *pleasure, enjoyment.*

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow, promise solemnly.*

vŏx, vōcis, f. [vocō], *voice, word.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vulnus], *wound, hurt, injure.* VULNER-ABLE.

vulnus, -eris, n. [vulnerō], *wound.*

vulpēs, -is, f. *fox.*

vultus, -ūs, m. *countenance, looks, features.*

Zama, -ae, f. *Zama, a town in Africa.*
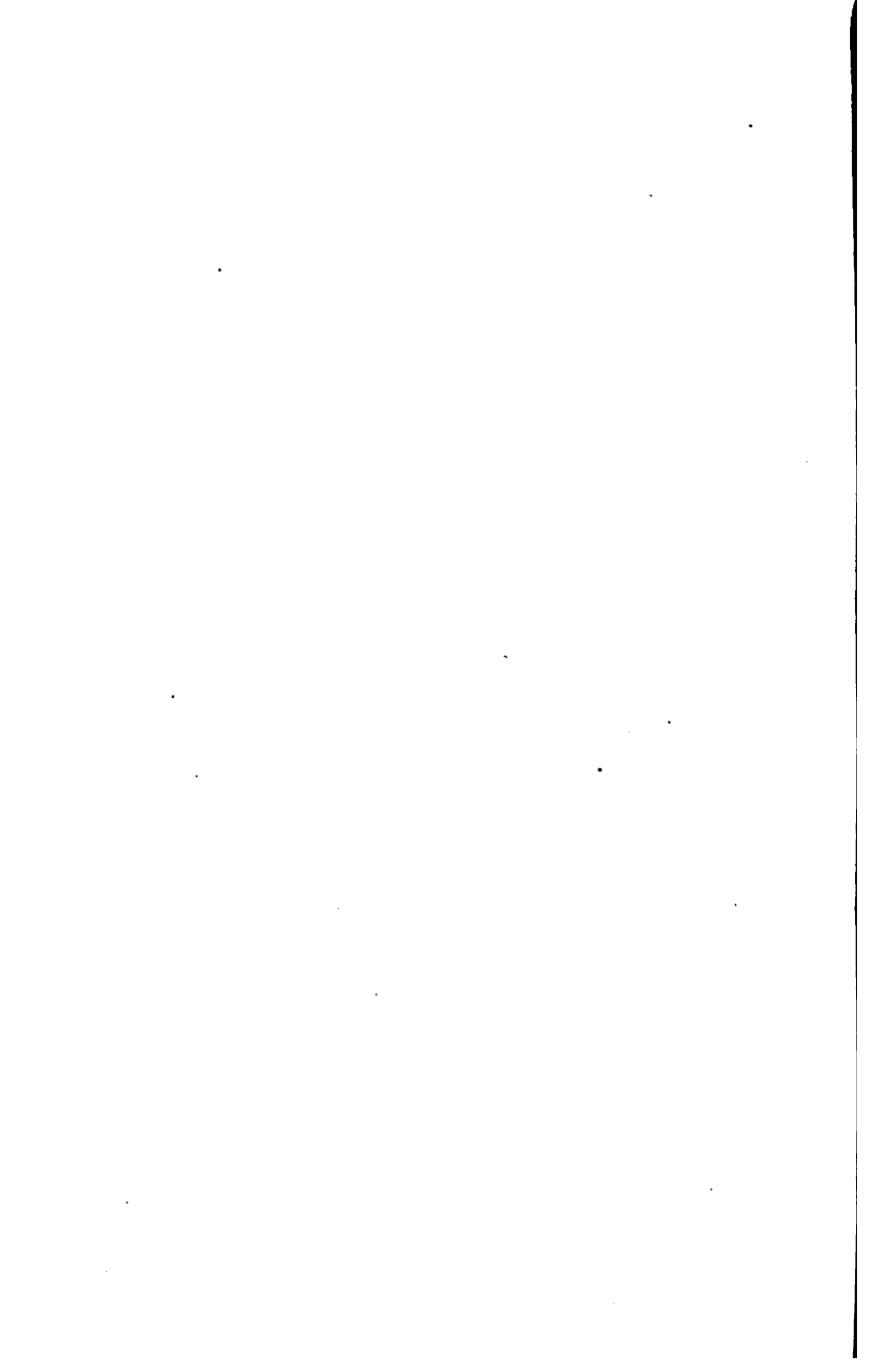
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

For the principal parts of verbs and other details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary or to the special vocabularies.

a, art., commonly not translated; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (308).
abandon, relinquō, 3.
able (be), possum (296, *a*, 517).
about, dē, *w. abl.*
absent (be), absum (516).
abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
abuse, abūtor, 3, *w. abl.*
accept, accipio, 3.
account of (on), *abl. of cause.*
accuse, accūsō, 1.
accustomed (be), soleō, 2 (362).
address, cōntiōnor, 1.
admonish, moneō, 2 (512).
adorn, ōrnō, 1.
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
advise, moneō, 2 (512).
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, *f.*
Africanus, Āfricānus, -ī, *m.*
after, post, *w. acc.;* cum, *w. subj.;* sometimes implied in participle.
afterwards, posteā, deinde.
aid, iuvō, 1.
alarm, *n.* terror, -ōris, *m.*
alarm, *v.* terreō, 2.

alas! ēheu !
Alexander, Alexander, -drī, *m.*
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (292).
alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um (291).
also, quoque.
altar, āra, -ae, *f.*
although, cum.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um ; vetus, -eris (175, 207).
and, et; atque, *or* āc ; -que.
anger, īra, -ae, *f.*
animal, animal, -ālis, *n.* (148).
another, alius, -a, -ud (292).
any, ūllus, -a, -um (291); aliquis, -qua, -quid, *or* -quod (308); quisquam, ——, quidquam (308, *b*); quīvīs (308, *b*).
arm, armō, 1.
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
around, circum, *w. acc.*
arouse, incitō, 1.
Arpinum, Arpīnum, -ī, *n.*

arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*
art, ars, artis, *f.*
as, ut.
as to, ut.
Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*
ask, interrogō, 1; (for), quaerō, 3.
assault, *n.* impetus, -ūs, *m.*
assault, *v.* oppūgnō, 1.
at, in, *w. acc. or abl ;* in combination w. verbs (*wonder at,* etc.), see the verbs; *w. names of towns,* locative case (180).
at once, statim.
attack, *n.* impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attack, *v.* oppūgnō, 1.
away (go), abeō (327); discēdō, 3.
away from, ā *or* ab, *w. abl.;* ē *or* ex, *w. abl.*

back (bring or carry), referō (521); reportō, 1.
bad, malus, -a, -um (207).
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
battle, pūgna, -ae, *f. ;* proelium, -ī, *n.*
be, sum (516).
beak (of a ship), rōstrum, -ī, *n.*
bear, ferō (521); portō, 1; tolerō, 1; (off), abdūcō, 3; auferō (521).
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod; quia.
become, fīō (520).
before, ante, *w. acc.*
begin, incipiō, 3; ineō (521).
Belgae, Belgae, -ārum, *m.*
believe, crēdō, 3, *w. dat.*
benefit, prōsum (518), *w. dat.*
besiege, obsideō, 2; oppūgnō, 1.
best, optimus, -a, -um (207).
better, melior, -us (207).

between, inter, *w. acc.*
bid, iubeō, 2.
big, māgnus, -a, -um.
bind, vinciō, 4.
bird, avis, -is, *f.* (148, *c*).
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, culpa, -ae, *f.*
boat, cymba, -ae, *f.*
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
boldly, cum audāciā.
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
born (be), nāscor, 3.
both (*each of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque (200); *both....and,* et ... et.
bow, arcus, -ūs, *m.* (231).
boy, puer, -erī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter; cum virtūte.
bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, *f.;* virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
bring, portō, 1; ferō (521); together), cōnferō; (up), ēdūcō, 1; (back), reportō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
build, aedificō, 1.
building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*
but, at; autem; sed.
by, ā, ab, *w. abl. ;* denoting means or instrument, *abl. alone ;* sometimes implied in participle.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1; (together), convocō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*
can, possum (296, *a*, 517).
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*

capture, capiō, 3.
Capua, Capua, -ae, f.
care, cūra, -ae, f.
carefully, cum cūrā.
carry, portō, 1; ferō (521); (away, off), auferō, abdūcō; (back), referō; *carry on war*, bellum gerō.
Carthaginian, Poenus, -ī, m.
cause, praebeō, 2.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, m.
certain, (a), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (308) (= *sure*), certus, -a, -um.
change, mūtō, 1.
chief, prīnceps, -cipis, m.
children, puerī, -ōrum, m.; līberī, -ōrum, m. (61).
Christ, Chrīstus, -ī, m.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, m.
circumstance, rēs, reī, f. (258).
citadel, arx, arcis, f.
citizen, cīvis, -is, m. and f.
city, urbs, -is, f.
close at hand, prope.
clothe, vestiō, 4.
cold, frīgus, -oris, n.
come, veniō, 4; (back), reveniō, 4; (out), ēmergō, 3; (together), conveniō, 4.
command, imperō, 1, w. dat.; iubeō, 2, w. acc.; praesum (516), w. dat.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, m.; dux, ducis, m. and f.
companion, comes, -itis, m. and f.
comrade, comes, -itis, m. and f.
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3.
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, m.
corn, frūmentum, -ī, n.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, f.

correct, corrigō, 3.
country (*fatherland*), patria, -ae, f.; terra, -ae, f.; (*not city*), rūs, rūris, n.
country people, rūsticī, -ōrum, m.
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
course, iter, itineris, n. (499).
creature, bēstia, -ae, f.
cross, trānseō (520).
cultivate, colō, 3.
cup, pōculum, -ī, n.

danger, perīculum, -ī, n.
dare, audeō, 2 (362).
daring, audācia, -ae, f.
daringly, cum audāciā.
Darius, Dārēus, -ī, m.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, f. (p. 13, n. 5).
day, diēs, -ēī, m. and f. (258).
daybreak (at), prīmā lūce.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
deck, ōrnō, 1.
decree, dēcernō, 3.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
deer, cerva, -ae, f.
defeat, vincō, 3; superō, 1.
defend, dēfendō, 3.
delay, mora, -ae, f.
delight, dēlectō, 1.
Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum, m.
depart, discēdō, 3; exeō (520).
deputy, lēgātus, -ī, m.
desire, volō (519); cupiō, 3.
despatch, litterae, -ārum, f.
destroy, dēleō, 2.
die, morior, 3.
difficult, difficilis, -e (198).
difficulty (with), vix.
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, f.
diligent, dīligēns, -entis.

diligently, dīligenter; cum dīli- gentiā.

disgraceful, turpis, -e.

do, faciō, 3 ; agō, 3.

doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.

dove, columba, -ae, *f.*

draw up, īnstruō, 3.

drive, agō, 3 ; agitō, 1.

Duilius, Duīlius, -ī, *m.*

during, (= amid) inter.

duty, mūnus, -eris, *n.*

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (308, *b*); (of two), uterque, utraque, utrum- que (291).

eager, ācer, ācris, ācre.

eagerly, cum studiō.

eagerness, studium, -ī, *n.*

earth, terra, -ae, *f.*

easily, facile.

easy, facilis, -e (198).

educate, ēducō, 1.

eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.

elder, senior, -ius (207).

encourage, cohortor, 1.

end, fīnis, -is, *m.* (148, *c*).

endure, tolerō, 1.

enemy, hostis, -is, *m.* and *f.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.* (149).

enjoy, fruor, 3, *w. abl.*

Ennius, Ennius, -ī, *m.*

enter, ineō (520).

equal, pār, paris.

escape, sē ēripere.

especially, māximē.

Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*

even, etiam; ipse (304, *g*).

Fabricius, Fabricius, -ī, *m.*

fact, rēs, reī, *f.* (258).

fair, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

faithfully, fidēliter.

famous, clārus, -a, -um.

far, longē.

farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*

father, pater, -tris, *m.*

fault, vitium, -ī, *n.*; culpa, -ae, *f.*; *find fault with,* vituperō, 1 ; culpō, 1.

favor, faveō, 2, *w. dat.*

fear, *n.* terror, -ōris, *m.*

fear, *v.* timeō, 2.

few, paucī, -ae, -a.

field, ager, agrī, *m.*; *in the field,* mīlitiae (*loc.*).

fight, pūgnō, 1 ; dīmicō, 1.

fill up, compleō, 2.

find, reperiō, 4.

fine, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

finish, cōnficiō, 3.

fire, īgnis, -is, *m.*

firmness, cōnstantia, -ae, *f.*

first, prīmus, -a, -um.

five hundred, quīngentī, -ae, -a.

flee, fugiō, 3.

flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*

flower, flōs, flōris, *m.*

follow, sequor, 3.

fond of (be), amō, 1.

food, cibus, -ī, *m.*

foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*

foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*

for, *conj.* nam.

for, *sign of dative ; prep.,* dē, prō, *w. abl.;* of time, space, pur- pose, in, *w. acc.*

force, manus, -ūs, *f.*

forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*

foresight, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*

forever, semper.

form, faciō, 3.

former (the), ille (100, *e*).
fortify, mūniō, 4.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
forum, forum, -ī, *n.*
forward (go), prōcēdō, 3; prō-
   gredior, 3.
free, līber, -era, -erum.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
frighten, terreō, 2.
frightened, territus, -a, -um.
from, dē, *w. abl.; away from,* ā
   or ab, *w. abl.; out of,* ē *or* ex,
   w. abl.
furnish, praebeō, 2.
further, ūlterior, -ius (200).

gain, reportō, 1.
Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*
garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
Gaul (a), Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.;*
   imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*
get (possession of), potior, 4, *w.
   abl.; (ready),* parō, 1.
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, 1.
glad, laetus, -a, -um.
go, eō (520) ; (forth, out), exeō ;
   (off, away), abeō ; discēdō, 3 ;
   (on, forward), prōgredior, 3 ;
   (up to), subeō.
god, deus, -ī, *m.* (499).
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.* (p. 13, *n.* 5).
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um (500).

good-bye, valē, valēte.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grant, dō, 1.
great, māgnus, -a, -um (207) ;
   ingēns, -entis.
greatest, summus, -a, -um (199).
greatly, māximē.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
Greek (a), Graecus, -ī, *m.*
ground (on the), humī (*loc.*).
guard, custōdiō, 4.

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*
happen, accidō, 3.
harbor, portus, -ūs (231).
harm (do), noceō, 2; obsum (395);
   w. dat.
hasten, properō, 1.
have, habeō, 2.
he, is (119) ; hīc (100); ille (100).
head, caput, -itis, *n.* (126) ; *be at
   the head of,* praesum (516).
health, valētūdō, -inis, *f.*
health (be in good), valeō, 2.
hear, audiō, 4 (515).
heavy, gravis, -e.
helmet, galea, -ae, *f.*
help, iuvō, 1.
Helvetia, Helvētia, -ae, *f.*
Helvetians (the), Helvētiī, -ōrum,
   m.
Henna, Henna, -ae, *f.*
her, ēius (119); illīus (100); *re-
   flexive,* suus, -a, -um (248, *b*).
hero, vir, virī, *m.* (141).
hesitate, dubitō, 1.
hide, lateō, 2.
high, altus, -a, -um ; superus, -a,
   -um (199).

highest, summus, -a, -um (199).

hill, collis, -is, *m.*

himself, *see* self.

his, ēius (119); illīus (100); *re-flexive,* suus, -a, -um (248, *b*).

history, historia, -ae, *f.*

hither, citerior, -ius (200).

hold, habeō, 2 ; teneō, 2 ; con-tineō, 2.

home, domus, -ūs, *f.* (499) ; **at home,** domī.

hope, *n.* spēs, -eī, *f.*

hope, *v.* spērō, 1.

horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.* (230).

horse, equus, -ī, *m.*

horseman, horse-soldier, eques, -itis, *m.*

hostage, obses, -idis, *m.* and *f.*

hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*

house, domus, -ūs, *f.* (499).

hundred, centum.

hunter, vēnātōr, -ōris, *m.*

hurt, noceō, 2, *w. dat.*

I, ego (245).

if, sī; *if not,* nisi.

ill, adv. male (215).

in, in, *w. abl.*

incite, incitō, 1.

increase, augeō, 2.

industriously, cum dīligentiā.

industry, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*

infantry, peditēs, -um, *m. ;* pedi-tātus, -ūs, *m.*

Infernals (the), īnferī, -ōrum, *m.*

inform, certiōrem faciō.

inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.* and *f.*

injure, noceō, 2; obsum (516); *w. dat.*

into, in, *w. acc.*

island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*

it, is, ea, id (119); **hīc, ille** (100)

Italy, Ītalia, -ae, *f.*

itself, *see* self.

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*

jewel, ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*

joy, gaudium, -ī, *n.*

joyfully, cum gaudiō.

Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.* (499)

just, iūstus, -a, -um.

keep, habeō, 2 ; teneō, 2.

keep off, arceō, 2.

kill, necō, 1 ; interficiō, 3.

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*

know, sciō, 4 ; (not), nesciō, 4.

known, nōtus, -a, -um.

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*

labor, *n.* labor, -ōris, *m.*

labor, *v.* labōrō, 1.

lack, dēsum (516); careō, 2.

land, terra, -ae, *f.*

large, māgnus, -a, -um (207).

last, suprēmus, -a, -um (199); ūltimus, -a, -um (209).

latter (the), hīc, haec, hōc (100, *e*).

laugh, rīdeō, 2 ; (aloud), cachin-nō, 1.

laziness, pigritia, -ae, *f.*

lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.

lead, dūcō, 3; (out, forth, off), ēdūcō, 3.

leader, dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.;* prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*

leaf, folium, -ī, *n.*

learn, discō, 3.

left (hand), sinister, -tra, -trum.

legate, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

let, *sign of subj. or imperative.*

letter, epistula, -ae, *f.;* litterae, -ārum, *f.*
lie (= *recline*), iaceō, 2.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, *adj.* levis, -e.
light, *n.* lūx, lūcis, *f.*
like, similis, -e (198.)
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, vīvō, 3; habitō, 1.
long, longus, -a, -um; *for a long. time, long,* diū.
look (at), spectō, 1; **(out for)**, cūrō, 1.
love, amō, 1 (511).
lower, īnferior, -ius (199).
luckily, fēlīciter.

maiden, maid, puella, -ae, *f.* (ser-vant), ancilla, -ae, *f.*
make, faciō, 3.
man, vir, virī, *m.* (57); homō, -inis, *m.* (141).
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march, via, -ae, *f.;* iter, itine-ris, *n.* (499).
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
Marius, Marius, -ī, *m.*
master, dominus, -ī, *m.;* magis-ter, -trī, *m.* (61).
mean, habeō in animō.
means (*by means of*), *use abl.*
meantime (in the), interim.
meanwhile, interim.
Mercury, Mercurius, -ī, *m.*
merry, laetus, -a, -um.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
mind, animus, -ī, *m.*
mine, meus, -a, -um (247).
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, *f.*

money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*
more, plūs (208); magis.
most, plūrimus, -a, -um (207).
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
mourn, lūgeō, 2.
move, moveō, 2.
much, multus, -a, -um (207).
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
Muse, Mūsa, -ae, *f.*
must, *expressed by gerundive.*
my, meus, -a, -um (247).

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
Nasica, Nāsīca, -ae, *m.*
near, ad, *w. acc.;* prope, *w. acc.*
near by, at hand, prope.
nearer, propior, -ius (200).
neighbor, vīcīnus, -ī, *m.*
neither, neque.
neither (of two), neuter, -tra, -trum (291).
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, posterus, -a, -um; postrē-mus, -a, -um (199).
nibble, carpō, 3.
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
Nile (the), Nīlus, -ī, *m.*
nine, novem.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
no, nūllus, -a, -um (291).
nobody, no one, nēmō, -inis, *m.* and *f.; that no one* (*neg. pur-pose*), nē quis.
no longer, iam, *w. neg.*
nor, neque.

not, nōn; nē.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
now, nunc; iam.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

oar, rēmus, -ī, *m.*
obey, pāreō, 2, *w. dat.*
of, *sign of genitive;* dē, *w. abl.;*
 out of, ē *or* ex, *w. abl.*
offer, *n.* prōpositum, -ī, *n.*
offer, *v.* prōpōnō, 3.
often, saepe.
Oh! O.
old, antīquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris
 (175, 206, 211); (**man**), senex,
 senis (499).
on, in, *w. abl. ; (of time)*, abl.
once (upon a time), ōlim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um (284); *one . . .
 another*, alius . . . alius; *the one
 . . . the other*, alter . . . alter.
only, tantum.
open, aperiō, 4.
order, imperō, 1, *w. dat.;* iubeō,
 2, *w. acc. ; in order to*, ut, *w.
 subj.*
other, alius, -a, -ud (292); *some
 . . . others*, aliī . . . aliī; *(of
 two)*, alter, -era, -erum.
ought, dēbeō, 2; *gerundive.*
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
ourselves, *see* self.   [the verbs.
out, in combination w. verbs, see
out of, ē *or* ex, *w. abl.*
overcome, vincō, 3; superō, 1.
overwhelm, superō, 1.
own (his, her, their), suus, -a,
 -um; (**my**), meus, -a, -um; (**our**),
 noster, -tra, -trum; (**your**),
 vester, -tra, -trum; (**thy**), tuus,
 -a, -um (247).

parent, parēns, -entis, *m.* and *f.*
Parmenio, Parmeniō, -ōnis, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
patience, patientia, -ae, *f.* [entiā.
patiently, patienter ; cum pati-
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
peasant, rūsticus, -ī, *m.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
perform, fungor, 3, *w. abl.*
peril, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
permit, permittō, 3, *w. dat.*
persuade, persuādeō, 2, *w. dat.*
physician, medicus, -ī, *m.*
pitch (camp), pōnō, 3.
place, locus, -ī, *m.* (242); **in
 that place**, ibi.
plain, plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.*
pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.
please, placeō, 2, *w. dat.*
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
plough, *n.* arātrum, -ī, *n.*
plough, *v.* arō, 1.
pluck, carpō, 3.
Pluto, Plūtō, -ōnis, *m.*
Po (the), Padus, -ī, *m.*
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
Pompey, Pompēius, Pompēī, *m.*
poor, miser, -era, -erum.
praise, *n.* laus, laudis, *f.*
praise, *v.* laudō, 1.
prefer, mālō (519).
present (be), adsum (516), *w. dat.*
presently, mox.
preserve, cōnservō, 1.
pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
Proserpine, Prōserpina, -ae, *f.*
protect, tegō, 3.
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
prudence, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
prudent, prūdēns, -entis.
punish, pūniō, 4.

punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*

purpose (*for the purpose of*), ut or quī, *w. subj.*; ad, *w. gerund or gerundive*; causā, *w. gerund or gerundive*; supine.

put, pōnō, 3; **(to death),** interficiō, 3; **(to flight),** fugō, 1.

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*

question, interrogō, 1.

rather, *comp. degree; wish rather,* mālō (519).

read, legō, 3.

receive, recipiō, 3; accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3.

refresh, recreō, 1.

reign, rēgnō, 1.

rejoice, gaudeō, 2.

remain, maneō, 2.

remove (= *emigrate*), dēmigrō, 1.

render, praebeō, 2.

renown, fāma, -ae, *f.*; glōria, -ae, *f.*

reply, respondeō, 2.

return, redeō (520); revertor, 3.

reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*

riches, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f.*

right (hand), dexter, -tra, -trum.

river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*

road, via, -ae, *f.*

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.

Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*

Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*

rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*

rout, fugō, 1.

rule, *n.* imperium, -ī, *n.*

rule, *v.* regō, 3 (513); rēgnō, 1.

Sabines, Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m.*

sad, trīstis, -e; maestus, -a, -um.

safe, tūtus, -a, -um.

safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*

sake (*for the sake*), causā, *w. gen*

same, īdem, eadem, idem (303).

save, servō, 1; cōnservō, 1.

say, dīcō, 3; inquit.

Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*

sea, mare, -is, *n.*

second, secundus, -a, -um.

see, videō, 2.

seem, videor, 2.

seize, occupō, 1.

self, ipse, -a, -um (303); suī (245).

senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*

send, mittō, 3.

servant, servus, -ī, *m.*

set (out), proficīscor, 3; **(free),** līberō, 1.

seventeen, septendecim.

seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

Sextus, Sextus, -ī, *m.*

shake, agitō, 1.

share, dispertiō, 4.

she, ea (119, *c*); haec, illa (100, *f*).

shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*

ship, nāvis, -is, *f.* (149).

short, brevis, -e.

shrewd, ācer, -cris, -cre.

sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.

side (*on the other side of*), trāns, *w. acc.*

since, cum, *w. subj.*; sometimes implied in participle.

sixth, sextus, -a, -um.

sixty, sexāgintā.

size, māgnitūdō, -inis, *f.*

skill, scientia, -ae, *f.*

skillful, skilled, perītus, -a, -um.

slave, servus, -ī, *m.*

slay, necō, 1; interficiō, 3.

sleep, somnus, -ī, *m.*

small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, ita; tam; (**great**), tantus, -a, -um; (**that**), ut; (**as not to**), ut nōn; nē.
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
some (**one**), aliquis, -qua, -quid, -quod (308); quīdam, quaedam, quod- or quiddam; *some . . . others,* aliī . . . aliī; (*of two parties*), alterī . . . alterī; often not expressed.
something, aliquid.
sometimes, interdum.
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.* (495).
soon, mox.
source, fōns, fontis, *m.*
sowing, sēmentis, -is, *f.*
space, spatium, -ī, *n.*
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*
speedily, cum celeritāte, celeriter.
spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*
spirited, ācer, -cris, -cre.
spur, calcar, -āris, *n.*
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.;* rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
statue, statua, -ae, *f.*
stature, statūra, -ae, *f.;* māgnitūdō corporis.
stay, maneō, 2.
stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
still, *adv.* tamen.
strange, mīrābilis, -e.
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.
sturdy, validus, -a, -um.
subdue, pācō, 1.
successfully, optimē; fēlīciter.
suddenly, subitō.
suffer, tolerō, 1; labōrō, 1.

summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
superior, superior, -ius (199).
sure (**be**), fac, facite, *w.* ut.
surpass, superō, 1.
survive, supersum (516).
swiftly, celeriter.
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

table, mēnsa, -ae, *f.*
take, capiō, 3; occupō, 1; sūmō, 3; (**by storm**), expūgnō, 1.
talent, talentum, -ī, *n.*
tale, fābula, -ae, *f.*
tall, altus, -a, -um.
task, pēnsum, -ī, *n.*
taste, gustō, 1.
tell, nārrō, 1; dīcō, 3.
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
ten, decem.
tender, tener, -era, -erum.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terrify, terreō, 2.
territories, fīnēs, -ium, *m.*
terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*
testudo, testūdō, -inis, *f.*
than, quam; *abl.* (194).
thanksgiving, supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
that, *conj.* (*in purpose or result clauses*), ut; (*after verbs of fearing*), nē; (**not**), nē; ut nōn; (*after verbs of fearing*), ut; (*after verbs of saying and the like*), not translated.
that, *demon. pron.,* is, ea, id (119); ille, -a, -ud (100); iste, -a, -ud (303); *rel. pron.,* quī, quae, quod (110).   [ea, id (119).
the, commonly not expressed; is,
their, *gen. plur. of* is; *reflexive,* suus, -a, -um (247).

themselves, *see* self.

then, tum.

there, ibi; as an expletive, not translated.

therefore, igitur.

thing, rēs, reī, *f.; sometimes* omitted.

think, putō, 1.

thirteen, tredecim.

thirty, trīgintā.

this, is, ea, id (119); hīc, haec, hōc (100).

though, cum, *w. subj.; sometimes* implied in participle.

thousand, mīlle (284, *d*).

three, trēs, tria (284).

three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.

through, per, *w. acc.*

throw, iaciō, 3.

thus, ita.

Ticinus (the), Ticīnus, -ī, *m.*

time, tempus, -oris, *n.*

tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.

to, *sign of dative;* ad, in, *w. acc.;* (*expressing purpose*), ut, *w. subj.;* ad, *w. gerund or gerundive;* causā, *w. gerund or gerundive; supine.*

to-day, hodiē.

together with, cum, *w. abl.*

toil, labōrō, 1.

touch, tangō, 3.

towards, ad, in, *w. acc.*

town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*

townsman, oppidānus, ī, *m.*

train, ēducō, 1.

triumph, triumphus, -ī, *m.*

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*

true, vērus, -a, -um.

trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*

trumpeter, tubicen, -inis, *m.*

trust, fīdō, 3 (363).

try, tentō, 1.

turn, flectō, 3.

twenty, vīgintī.

two, duo, -ae, -o; **(which of)**, uter, -tra, -trum; **(each of)**, uterque, utraque, utrumque.

under, sub, *w. acc. and abl.*

undergo, subeō (520).

unknown, incōgnitus, -a, -um.

unlike, dissimilis, -e (198).

unwilling (be), nōlō (519).

up, in combination w. verbs, see the verbs.

upon, in, *w. acc. or abl.*

use, ūtor, 3; *w. abl.*

useful, ūtilis, -e.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

vanquish, vincō, 3.

vehemently, graviter.

Vergil, Vergilius, -ī, *m.*

very, *superl. degree;* ipse, -a, -um.

victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

vine, vītis, -is, *f.*

virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

wage (war), gerō, 3.

walk (= *take a walk*), ambulō, 1.

wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.;* moenia, -ium, *n.*

wander through, peragrō, 1.

want (= *wish*), volō (519); (= *lack*), careō, 2, *w. abl.;* dēsum.

war, bellum, -ī, *n.*

warn, moneō, 2.

water, aqua, -ae, *f.*

wave, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*

way, via, -ae, *f.;* iter, itineris, *n.*
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.
well, bene (215).
what, *interrog.*, quis, quae, quid (quod) (105).
when, cum, ubi.
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
whether, num.
which, quī, quae, quod (110); (*of two*), uter, utra, utrum (291).
while, dum; sometimes implied in participle.
white, albus, -a, -um.
whither, quō.
who, *rel.*, quī, quae (110); *interrog.*, quis, quae (105).
whole, tōtus, -a, -um (291).
why, cūr.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
wild beast, fera, -ae, *f.*
willing (be), volō (519).
win, reportō, 1.
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
wing (of an army), cornū, -ūs, *n.*
winter-quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, *n.*
wisdom, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
wise, sapiēns, -entis; prūdēns -entis.
wish, volō (519); (**not**) nōlō (519).

with, cum, *w. abl.;* sometimes abl. alone.
withdraw, discēdō, 3.
without, sine, *w. abl.*   [-eris, *f.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.;* mulier,
wonder, wonder at, mīror, 1.
wont (be), soleō, 2 (362).
woods, silva, -ae, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.;* vōx, vōcis, *f.*
work, labōrō, 1.
world, orbis terrārum.
worse, pēior, -ius (207).
would that, utinam.
wound, *n.* vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wound, *v.* vulnerō, 1.
write, scrībō, 3.
writer, scrīptor, -ōris, *m.*

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yesterday, herī.
yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud (100, *c*).
you, *sing.* tū ; *plur.* vōs (245).
young, iuvenis, -e (207).
young man, youth, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.;* iuvenis, -is, *m.*
your, *sing.* tuus, -a, -um ; *plur.* vester, -tra, -trum (247).
yourselves, see *self.*
youth (body of), iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.*

Zama, Zama, -ae, *f.*
zeal, studium, -ī, *n.*
zealously, cum studiō.

INDEX.

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

Founded on comparative grammar. Revised and Enlarged by

JAMES B. GREENOUGH,

Assisted by

GEORGE L. KITTREDGE,

Professors in Harvard University.

12mo. Half leather. 488 pages. For introduction, $1.20.

THIS is offered as a thoroughly satisfactory manual for preparatory schools and colleges, and it is believed to combine excellences of diverse kinds in such a way as to be the closest possible approach to an ideal grammar.

First. This has always been regarded as the truest and soundest of Latin grammar manuals. Instead of making arbitrary laws and distinctions in order to secure an artificial clearness of statement, this grammar has been faithful to the spirit and the facts of the language. This is its fundamental excellence. The grammar explains the language instead of trying to make the language bear out the grammar.

Second. The present edition is as strong in class-room availability as it is for linguistic truth. George L. Kittredge, Professor of English at Harvard, was associate reviser, and largely on account of his combining special qualifications in Latin and in English, the style of the grammar was radically improved. It is believed to be now much clearer, more crisp and definite, more interesting and learnable, than any other grammar.

Third. Even in all the little points, the closest care was taken in the revision, and scarcely a book can be found in which the excellence is so uniform and in which the finish reaches so faithfully to the minutest details.

Fourth. In a word, the consensus of competent opinion seems to fully justify the belief that Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar is clearly the best: best for scholarship, convenience, completeness, and beauty; best for reference; and best for regular study.

Tracy Peck, *Professor of Latin in Yale University:* The essential facts of the language are stated with great clearness, and there is a rich suggestiveness as to the rationale of constructions.

William A. Packard, *Professor of Latin in Princeton University:* I find it essentially improved by the revision and the additions it has received, and regard it as an unsurpassed compendious grammar for use in our schools and colleges.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas.

Second Year Latin Book

Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by

JAMES B. GREENOUGH,
Professor of Latin in Harvard University,

B. L. D'OOGE,
Professor of Latin and Greek in Michigan Normal College, Ypsilanti,

AND

M. GRANT DANIELL,
Recently Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston.

12mo. Half morocco. 685 pages. Fully illustrated. Price, $1.25.

THIS book is intended to follow any first Latin book. It embraces in Part I. 96 pages of easy Latin stories and fables as a preparation for Caesar, followed in Part II. by selections from Caesar's *Gallic War*, equivalent in amount to the first four books. It is hoped that thus a better graded and wider course, and a more interesting one as well, may be found for young students than the unvaried reading of the first four books of Caesar's Commentaries.

Part II. provides a selected course of reading from Caesar rather than the first four books. Parts of these books are unusually difficult, and parts are lacking in interest. By making selections from the seven books, both of these obstacles to successful work have been in large measure overcome. The selections from Caesar include the War against the Belgian Confederacy, the Campaign against the Veneti, the two Invasions of Britain, the two Invasions of Germany, the Siege and Sack of Avaricum, and the Siege of Alesia.

Special attention is called to the Notes. They are very copious and in every respect adapted to the needs of second-year students of Latin.

A considerable number of oral exercises for turning English into Latin in the form of question and answer, and some exercises for oral and written translation, all founded on the miscellaneous matter in Part I., have been inserted, so that the writing and speaking of Latin may accompany the course in reading.
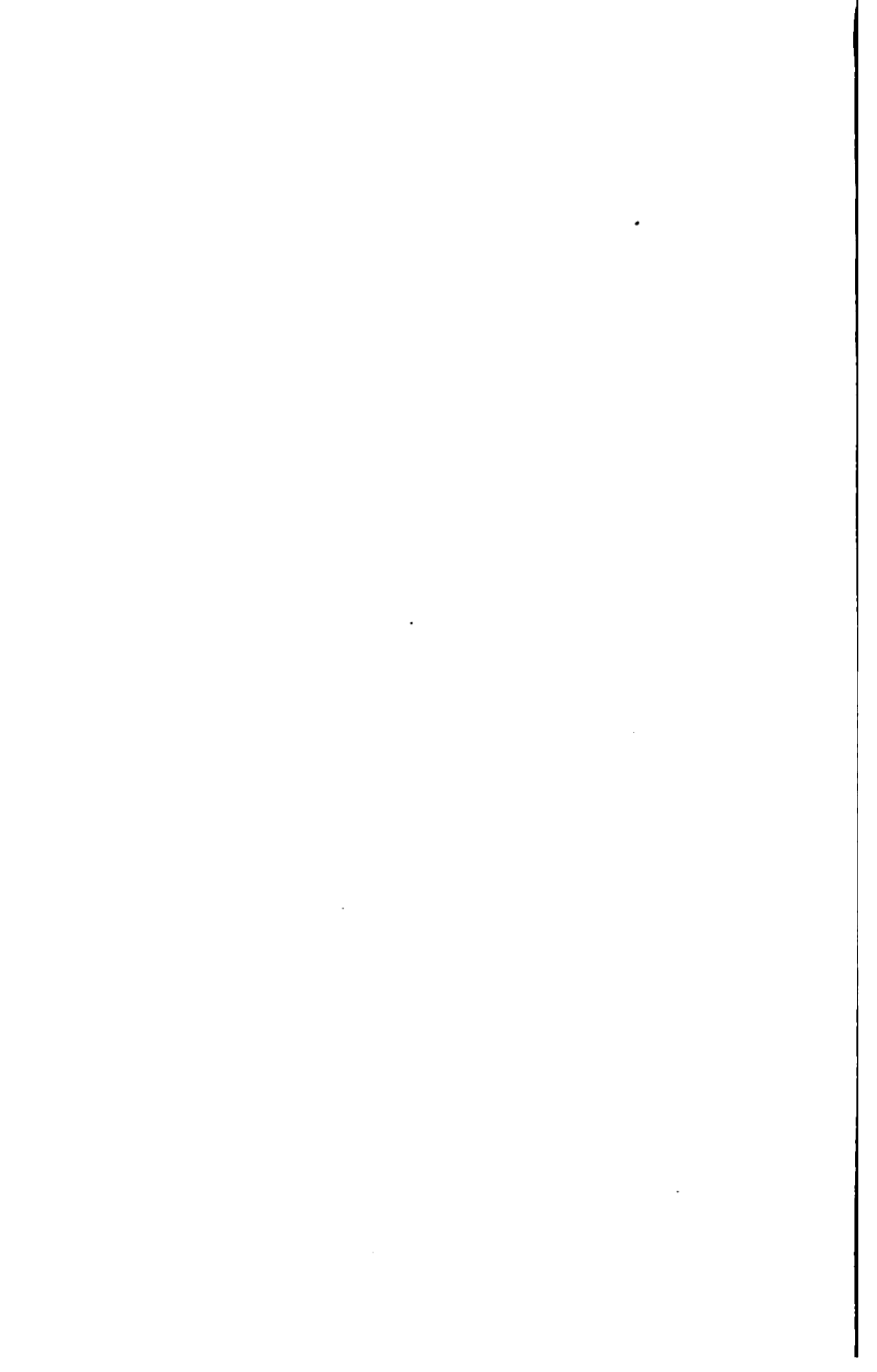
The vocabulary, like all the vocabularies in the Allen and Greenough series, is unique in that it gives full etymologies rather than mere hints at derivations. It is uncommonly full of phrases and idioms that occur in the text.

The illustrations, like those in the Allen and Greenough editions of Caesar, Cicero, and Virgil, have been selected with care, with the idea that they should be truly educative.

The leading colleges and universities have given assurance that the book will be readily accepted as the full equivalent of the first four books of Caesar's *Gallic War*.

GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,

Boston. New York. Chicago. Atlanta. Dallas. San Francisco. London.

Review

quero 13 37, 109
que 40, 115, 118
no 42, 123

Silence ≤ h. 5-9

Secur. 31, 32, 33, 34

34   4 conjugations.
?   5 ?

Irregular verbs.

4

1
5 6
5 4

(a) unceuber